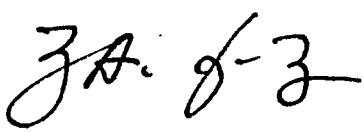

00088215

BOMBAY BRANCH
OF THE
ROYAL ASIATIC SOCIETY.
TOWN HALL, BOMBAY.

Digitized with financial assistance from the
Government of Maharashtra
on 05 October, 2018


EMPIRE OF CHINA
TIBET
HINDOOS
BAY OF BENGAL
CHINA SEA
FRANKLIN SEA
MAP
PEKIN & St PETERSBURG
CHINESE EMPIRE
(JOHN WALKER.)



NARRATIVE

OF THE

CHINESE EMBASSY

TO THE

KHAN OF THE TOURGOUTH TARTARS,

IN THE YEARS 1712, 13, 14, & 15;

BY

THE CHINESE AMBASSADOR,

AND PUBLISHED, BY THE EMPEROR'S AUTHORITY,

AT PEKIN.

88215 ZA-1-3

TRANSLATED FROM THE CHINESE,

AND ACCOMPANIED BY AN APPENDIX OF MISCELLANEOUS TRANSLATIONS.

BY

SIR GEORGE THOMAS STAUNTON, BART.
LL.D. & F.R.S.

ZA 1 3

LONDON:
JOHN MURRAY, ALBEMARLE-STREET.

1821.

915.1
Jx/Nar
88215



London: Printed by C. Roworth,
Bell-yard, Temple-bar.

PREFACE.

THE following translations were the occupation and amusement of a few intervals of leisure, during an occasional residence, of some years, within the Chinese dominions.

It is not presumed to offer them to the public as a specimen of Chinese literature; but it is certainly hoped, that the light which they may be found to throw generally on the character and attainments of that extraordinary people, will render them not wholly uninteresting.

Much, indeed, has been already written, and ably written, with the view of ascertaining the place to which the Chinese are entitled in the scale of civilized nations; but the question is one which can hardly yet be considered as set finally at rest: it is one upon which the early historians of China, (who were chiefly the resident missionaries,) and most of the modern travellers who have published accounts of their occasional visits to that country, are completely

at issue: and although it may perhaps be justly assumed, that the observations of the latter, as far as their opportunities extended, are, upon the whole, best entitled to confidence, considerable deductions must still be made for the many disadvantages under which they laboured, and the comparatively narrow limits to which their enquiries were restricted.

Until, therefore, a freer and more frequent personal intercourse with the Chinese shall have been permitted, it seems probable, that, in many respects, the information respecting them, upon which we may most safely rely, is to be found in their own writings. Their literature is certainly very extensive. A great variety of publications issues daily from the Chinese press: and although the subjects treated of are chiefly of a local interest, the portrait which the Chinese thus draw of themselves, their habits, manners, and institutions is not, on that account, the less complete.

This field of enquiry has not indeed been altogether neglected. The antiquities and the belles-lettres of the Chinese, have long since been ably illustrated by the missionaries; and, very recently, some valuable additions have been made to our acquisitions in this branch of Chinese literature, both on the continent and

in England; but, though much has been done, much certainly yet remains unattempted.

In a former work, (a version of the Chinese Penal Code,) the translator of the following collection endeavoured to give some idea of the *internal* policy by which the government of that vast empire is maintained and regulated.

On the present occasion, one of his chief objects has been the illustration of their *external* or foreign policy; a policy whose unpropitious effects on our political and commercial relations with them is sufficiently known, though its true source, and its intimate connexion with the system of the internal administration, is probably not equally well understood.

No just inference can certainly be drawn from the anti-social system pursued by the Chinese in their intercourse with other nations, in respect to their general character, unless we at the same time advert to the principles from which it flows, and the peculiar circumstances under which it operates; circumstances which, perhaps, render it no longer possible for the government, whatever new lights it may possess, voluntarily to abandon it, without, in some degree, compromising its own security.

It may readily be admitted that, considered in this point of view only, the Chinese would

rank very low indeed in the scale of civilized nations.

Their acquaintance with those general principles, which experience has shown to be so essential to the due regulation of the intercourse of all free and independent states, is perhaps, at this late period of their history, more vague and imperfect than that which necessity has taught most other nations, from the earliest dawn of their civilization.

The system of their internal policy is, indeed, highly wrought, refined, and artfully contrived for the peaceable government and coercion of the greatest multitude which (at least in modern times) the world has ever seen subjected to one sovereign authority. But, surrounded with barbarous tribes, and in great measure protected from their incursions by natural boundaries, they have neither had occasion for, nor the opportunity of learning, any of the principles of that inter-national law, which, in Europe, has arisen out of the collision of free and independent states; which is the very foundation of all peaceable and friendly relations between them, and even operates, while those relations are suspended, to mitigate, in some degree, the evils arising from their interruption. The Chinese, on the contrary, seem hardly, to this day, to entertain a distinct idea even of peace or war,

in the sense in which we employ those terms. With them, there is no peace which does not, in some measure, imply submission: there can be no war, which does not at the same time savour, in some degree, of rebellion.

The intercourse of the Chinese with the Tartars taught them no new lesson, as the latter passed almost immediately from the character of rebels to that of conquerors, and then became, like the Normans in England, incorporated with the people whom they had subdued. To that species and degree of civilization, therefore, which necessarily implies a distinct recognition of a law of nations, and of the rights and duties of independent communities in respect to each other, the Chinese have certainly but little claim: in fact, it is chiefly to this defect, in concurrence with the jealousy, naturally excited by the very great display of British power, both by sea and land, which has taken place of late years in their immediate vicinity, rather than to the actual corruption and commercial intolerance of the government, or the unsocial feelings and character of the people generally, that we are to attribute those repeated and distressing struggles, under which our great and encreasing commerce at Canton has latterly been, with so much difficulty, con-

ducted. The necessity of such struggles happily, however, appears at length to have ceased; and such of the offensive pretensions of the Chinese, as are still maintained in words, being understood to be abandoned in practice, our commercial intercourse with them again flourishes under the protection of a tacit accommodation, which seems equally satisfactory, as it obviously is advantageous, to both parties.

Under all the circumstances, however, which have been adverted to in the foregoing pages, it may easily be supposed that topics connected with the foreign relations of the Chinese, past or present, can occupy no very conspicuous portion of their literature. It is but rarely, indeed, and with apparent reluctance that the Chinese writers ever notice foreign nations, or advert at all to their transactions with them; seeming to consider them, whatever local or temporary interest they may happen to possess, as hardly worthy of any place on their permanent records, or deserving of more than a very slight notice from the historian.

Thus, relations of voyages and travels, and narratives of foreign negociations and expeditions, which are so numerous, and read with so much avidity amongst us in Europe, are of very rare appearance indeed among the productions of the Chinese press; even of those limited

communications and transactions with the neighbouring powers, which, of necessity, occasionally take place, but few traces appear in their published writings; and the following work is, in fact, the only one which the translator has met with of any authority, which strictly belongs to this class, and at the same time enters at some length into the detail of the principles of their external policy.

The title of *Yee-yeu-loo*, or a "Description of Foreign Countries," which is prefixed to the original work, conveys rather an erroneous, or, at least, an inadequate idea of its contents; as the notices of the countries travelled through are short and incidental, while the principal, and more immediate object of the work, is the relation of the proceedings of the embassy, upon which the writer of it was sent by the Emperor of China, in the year 1712, to the Khan of the Tourgouths, a considerable tribe of Eleuth or Calmuc Tartars, seated, at that period, on the banks of the Volga.

The ambassador commences his narrative with the relation of some particulars immediately concerning himself; he then gives at length the instructions he had received from his Sovereign, and afterwards proceeds, in the form of a journal, to detail the observations

that occurred upon his route, his intercourse and conversations with the several public authorities among the Russians and Tourgouths, with whom he communicated, more especially those with Prince Gagarin, the then Governor-General of Siberia, and with Ayuke, the Tourgouth Khan, or Sovereign; and he concludes with a recapitulation of the whole, in the form of an official report to his Sovereign of his proceedings.

The mission, the particulars of which are thus recorded, was undoubtedly a singular and remarkable event in Chinese history. The appointment of a deputation, consisting of several official persons, with a suitable train, to proceed upon a laborious, and, in some degree, hazardous expedition, to the distance of some thousand miles, and through the territories of a powerful neighbour, with whom they had but little previous intercourse, and that not always of the most amicable nature, certainly seems to bespeak the existence of a spirit of enterprize, and more enlarged and enlightened views, in the government of China at that period, than we should probably have looked for at any time in that of an Asiatic nation.

We may certainly ascribe this spirit, in a considerable degree, to the unusual energy

which had just been infused into the administration of the Chinese government, by the then recent event of the accession of the present Tartar dynasty, and the occupation of the throne by a monarch distinguished by his virtues and talents, and, comparatively speaking, by his enlightened liberality.

But in whatever respect the policy, which suggested the mission, may be considered to have been unusual and out of ordinary course in China, the Narrative, at least, is perfectly Chinese, both in its style and sentiments: the national spirit and character pervades it throughout, and will be obvious to every reader. It is possibly true, that precisely such a mission would not have been sent under any other circumstances, or at any other period of the Chinese history: but there is nothing either in the conduct of the mission, or in the narrative of it, which any Chinese or Tartar officer of ordinary attainments at the present day, might not equally have done or have written; and the whole transaction seems to have obtained the unequivocal sanction and approbation of the government, the Narrative having been published early in the next reign, under the Emperor's special authority, and a copy of it deposited in the Imperial library, at Pekin; as appears from its title

being duly registered in the Chinese printed and published catalogues of that collection.

In addition to the circumstances which thus authenticate the work, and give it a certain degree of authority, as an exemplification of the maxims of Chinese policy, we have the advantage also of being able to put the author's fidelity to the test, by comparing his statements and notices on passing objects, with those of Mr. Bell, in his account of a nearly contemporary expedition by a similar route; and it is certainly satisfactory to remark that there is a very general coincidence.

This agreement between two writers, in whose views, feelings, habits and prejudices, there could be so little in common, is certainly creditable to both of them. The veracity of Mr. Bell's Narrative may perhaps be considered to be too well established to need at present any further confirmation; but with respect to the Chinese author, considering how unfavourable the prevailing feelings of his nation, of contemptuous indifference for every thing that is foreign, must be, to accurate and minute enquiry; and how much the ordinary temptation to exaggerate or deviate from the truth, must be heightened in the case of a Chinese relator of his travels, by his almost absolute security from

detection, a very low degree of accuracy and fidelity would probably satisfy our expectations; while any considerable appearance of scrupulousness, will not only be deemed honourable to the individual historian, but, as far as a single instance can have weight, perhaps raise a little, our present very low estimate of the veracity of his countrymen in general.

The descriptions of the scenery, inhabitants, and remarkable objects which were seen in the course of the route, it must be confessed, are very meagre and unsatisfactory; but they derive some incidental interest from the novelty of the quarter from whence they proceed; besides which, the form of narration which the writer has adopted, has led him to describe the manners, customs, and notions of his own countrymen, as frequently as those of the people whom he visits, a peculiarity which may perhaps add little to the value of his work to Chinese readers, but which cannot be unacceptable to us, to whom China is naturally an object of greater curiosity and interest, than Tartary or Siberia.

Exclusive also of the merely descriptive portion of the Narrative, it derives a further interest from some singular and curious circumstances connected with the mission itself, which have long been partially known to us, by means

of the publications of the missionaries, but which were never before completely elucidated.

These writers have given us at length, the history of the origin of the Tourgouth tribes, of their first separation from the kindred tribes of Eleuths, and of their migration, in consequence, from their original place of settlement in a more eastern division of Tartary, to that extensive tract of country which was granted them by the Russians, between the Volga and the Jaik, in the vicinity of the Caspian sea: they have also acquainted us with the remarkable circumstance of their subsequent return in 1771, to their former settlements in the neighbourhood of China, and have given us a translation of the public record of their submission to the Chinese monarchy on that occasion: but it is only from the present Narrative, that we learn in what manner the connexion between the Chinese and those expatriated Tartars was maintained during this long interval, and how, in fact, the way was kept open for their thus abandoning their temporary connexion with Russia upon the first favourable opportunity, and conferring on the Chinese empire the gratifying homage of their voluntary return and final submission. In this point of view, therefore, it may certainly be considered as supply-

ing a link in the chain of history, in respect to these pastoral nations of Asia, which was previously wanting.

This Narrative may, lastly, be found to throw some light on the history of the Russian intercourse with China. Though it was not one of the professed objects of the mission, to open a negociation with the Court of Russia, it will be perceived that the Ambassadors were charged with several communications to the Russian Government, and that they were even specially instructed by the Emperor of China, to avail themselves of any invitation to a conference, which the Russian Sovereign, Peter the Great, might give them. A better understanding seems, in fact, to have subsisted at that time between the two Empires, than almost at any previous, or subsequent period; and had the war with Sweden not then pre-occupied the Czar Peter's attention, the Chinese Ambassadors would most probably have been invited to his Court, and some arrangements might possibly have been effected, of considerable importance to both countries.

The differences between the two nations, in regard to their respective boundaries, had been settled, and a regular commercial intercourse established as early as the year 1689, by the

treaty of Nershinsk: some further commercial advantages had also been gained through the negociation of Isbrand Ives, who had been sent to the Chinese Court, in the quality of Ambassador from Russia, in the year 1692.

From that period, till the year 1719, (a few years after the date of the present Narrative,) no further differences appear to have arisen; but in that year, some untoward circumstances interrupted the trade, and gave occasion to another Embassy, of which the public have long been in possession of a very curious and interesting account, in the work already alluded to, from the pen of Mr. Bell, an English gentleman attached to the mission.

The Russian trade with China nevertheless continued to experience from time to time many checks and interruptions, and does not, by any means, appear to have been attended with advantages at all corresponding with the progressive improvement and extension, in the mean while, of the trade carrying on by other European nations with China, by sea. The Russians, indeed, made an attempt in 1806, to participate also in this maritime commerce; but, although the ships which were sent in that year to the port of Canton, under the Russian flag, obtained cargoes without much difficulty, the

jealousy of the Court of Pekin was immediately excited by the unexpected intelligence of a visit from the Russians in that quarter, and a positive interdiction was consequently issued against the future admission of the ships of that nation at the port, in the event of any repetition of the attempt.

The last Russian Embassy to China arrived at the Chinese frontier in the course of the same year; but it does not appear to have been attended with any important results, favourable or otherwise, to the trade of that country. No official accounts of its proceedings have been published, or at least have reached this country; but it is generally understood to have met with a rejection, at least as peremptory and precipitate as that, which apparently, though not in fact, defeated the purposes of our own recent embassy to that country.

There was certainly much in the conduct of the Court of Pekin in the case of both of those Embassies, which in our eyes has seemed very unworthy of a great and civilized nation; but it will be clearly seen from the uniform language of the Chinese author of this Narrative, that the extravagant pretensions and principles, which gave a pretext for that conduct, were by no means of recent invention, but had been main-

tained in their fullest extent, even by the representatives of the most enlightened Sovereign, who ever swayed the sceptre of that country.

This is not the place for entering into a justification of the policy, which was adopted by the Russians and ourselves on those occasions, in refusing to submit to the humiliating ceremonials and tokens of homage, which the Chinese Court had attempted to impose; but it may be allowed just to observe, in passing, that with respect to the English Embassy at least, the most sanguine expectations entertained at its outset, did not calculate on a more favourable issue, in respect to the main object of all its negociations, (the stability and prosperity of British commerce with China,) than that, which, after the experience of three years, may now be pronounced to have been the actual result. Looking back, therefore, to the repeated and alarming interruptions of our trade by the Chinese authorities immediately previous to that embassy, the public will hardly be disposed hastily to condemn a policy, the adoption of which has been attended with such advantageous practical consequences; or rashly to infer, that, because our national honour was preserved, our national interests must necessarily have been sacrificed.

It still remains for the translator to say a few words upon *his* part of the performance. His aim on every occasion has been, to give a faithful interpretation of the sense of the original, together with as close an approximation to its style, as the genius of our language appeared to him to admit. The Narrative of the Chinese author being, for the most part, written in the colloquial style; this task was of less difficult attainment, than in the case of the generality of Chinese compositions; but in a few instances, wherein the writer has indulged in a more elevated and poetical strain, the translator has been obliged to allow himself a somewhat greater degree of latitude. In general, he has to regret the impossibility of conveying an adequate idea of the terseness and strength of the language of the Chinese original, consistently with the still more material object of a sufficient developement of the sense; the natural tendency of which has perhaps been to expand the translation, in some small degree, into a paraphrase.

The numerous prefaces which precede, as well as postscripts which follow the Narrative, in the original work, the translator has wholly omitted, finding that they contributed little or nothing to the illustration of the text, and that

they were written in that higher style of Chinese composition, which is least favourable to efficient translation. These ornamental pieces are frequently appended to Chinese works, with objects very distinct from that of mere illustration. In the present instance they are mostly laudatory poems, addressed to the author by his friends; instead of being, as might rather have been expected, explanatory essays, addressed by the author to the public.

The original Chinese map of the countries travelled through, is remarkable only for its rudeness and inaccuracy. It has not been difficult, however, with the aid of the text, to annex to the present translation, a correct delineation of the route; which has been traced accordingly, upon an outline of the country, verified by a reference to the excellent map of the Russian Empire and its dependencies, by Professor Pallas, and corrected in all other points, agreeably to the latest discoveries and authorities.

The minor pieces, of which translations have been given in the present volume, have been printed separately in the form of an Appendix. They consist of an Abstract of part of a Chinese

Novel; some Notices of Chinese Plays, an Extract from a Chinese Herbal, and a Collection of Miscellaneous Official Documents, extracted from the Pekin Gazette. These last extracts are sufficiently copious to convey a pretty correct idea of the ordinary contents of this Gazette, which is evidently, in China, a state engine of no inconsiderable importance, and exhibits obvious proofs of an anxiety to influence and conciliate public opinion upon all state questions, which, under a government theoretically so despotic, would hardly have been expected.

The extract from the Chinese Herbal will show the manner in which the Chinese treat subjects connected with Science and the Arts; and will, perhaps, from its minuteness, and apparently cautious and elaborate investigation of details; justify a hope that some valuable practical information may yet be drawn from some of their works of this description.

With respect to the Chinese Drama, and Chinese Works of Fiction in general, the Notices the Translator has been able to introduce on this occasion, fall so very short of what he could have wished to have been enabled to have offered to the public, as a specimen of this interesting branch of Chinese literature, that he

would not have ventured to include them at all in the present collection, except under the belief that the translations of Chinese writings of this class, which we as yet possess, being so few, even this trifling contribution to their amount may not be altogether unacceptable. He can only add, that, had he not wholly abandoned his Chinese pursuits, it would still have been his endeavour to have rendered these notices somewhat more complete.

Works of fiction, although they do not rank with what is generally considered by the Chinese, as their classical literature, are certainly with them a favourite branch of composition: many of them are written with considerable elegance, and hold a kind of middle place between their standard works, and those in which no refinement is aimed at above the language of ordinary discourse. Sometimes they profess to be founded on some historical, or some private or domestic fact—at other times, the story is avowedly fictitious, and expressly designed to illustrate the effects of some particular passion, or the operation of some particular principle. But, in every case, the Chinese author necessarily opens to the reader many views of the national habits and character, which, in the present state of our intercourse with that country, must be wholly out of the reach of our

personal observations. Perhaps the little Chinese novel, the publication of which in an English dress we owe to a late elegant scholar, Dr. Percy, formerly Bishop of Dromore, even under the disadvantage, in part, of a double translation, and the Editor's want of acquaintance with the language of the original, conveys a juster and more lively picture of the actual state of manners and society in China, than any other work which we possess in the English language.

The Dramatic Works of the Chinese are certainly less calculated, on the whole, than their Novels, to reward the labour of the Translator. Too local and national to please much as mere compositions, and their minute beauties of style and language necessarily, in great measure, lost in the translation, the remaining sources of interest are but slender; the dramatic dialogue drily rendered, and unaided by the talents of the actor, can convey, generally speaking, no more than a very imperfect outline of that interesting picture of life and manners, which, in their novels and romances, is filled up in its minutest details.

Of the Chinese Drama we possess as yet but two complete specimens in the English language; one translated originally into French in the latter end of the seventeenth century, by

Father Premare, and possessing some adventitious interest, from its having afforded the ground-plan of Voltaire's celebrated tragedy of the Orphan of China; and the other more recently, by Mr. Davis, a young but distinguished Chinese scholar of this country, and published three or four years ago in London, together with an interesting Introduction by the editor.

Upon the former work, by Father Premare, having had occasion to compare it with the original, the translator may perhaps be permitted to make a few observations. It appeared to him to be altogether a faithful and correct version, giving a perfectly fair view of the scope of the Chinese tragedy, without any attempt to reconcile it to our ideas, either by amplification or embellishment. Some redundancies and unnecessary details are indeed pruned away, which would have been insufferably tedious to the European reader: the songs also, which occur very frequently, and constitute probably not less than a fourth of the original text, are almost wholly omitted. These songs, it is to be observed, are by no means easily to be understood by a foreigner, and appear to be seldom or ever absolutely essential to the development of the plot; being, in general, little more than high-toned declamatory repetitions

of the sentiments expressed in the prose lines immediately preceding. Though certainly written in what may be termed poetic language, they are not subjected to any of the ordinary metrical or other rules of Chinese poetry; but it is evident that they are intended to be sung, or at least recited in some peculiar cadence, as the first words of some familiar song are always prefixed, in the precise manner that they are occasionally with us, in order to indicate in each case the appropriate tune.

Father Premare acknowledges very pointedly the difficulty of fully understanding these compositions; and it is probable, that, had he felt himself competent to have given a satisfactory version of them, he would not have omitted so favourable an opportunity of letting us into the secret of the merit of these and similar poetical productions among the Chinese. In fact, whatever is refined or elaborate in the language of the Chinese drama, seems to be confined almost exclusively to these songs, or, as they might more properly be termed, marked and emphatic passages, intended to be sung; they have even been considered by the late Bishop Hurd, in his Discourse on Poetical Imitation, as affording a rather remarkable instance of "coincidence "between the Chinese and the Grecian models,"

and as "somewhat resembling in character the "ancient Chorus." However this may be, it seems obvious that a translation of a Chinese play, in which all such passages were to be omitted, would be little better than a translation of one of Shakspeare's tragedies—Hamlet, for instance, which should be curtailed by the exclusion of all those soliloquies and beautifully elaborate passages, which are not absolutely essential in developing the plot or carrying on the narrative. This plan might sufficiently illustrate the general scope and design of the original writer, but certainly not do justice either to the merits of his style, or the richness of his imagination. By this comparison, it is by no means intended to condemn the performance of Father Premare, which, as far as it goes, is still undoubtedly a very valuable as well as rare example, in an European dress, of this branch of Chinese literature. The above omissions, notwithstanding his extensive and intimate knowledge of the language, he probably found, in consequence of the difficulty and obscurity of the original, almost unavoidable. But it is no more than justice to the merits of the Chinese drama, to show how faintly and imperfectly they are capable of being transfused into, or represented by, the

best of European translations. It is true that the translator of the Chinese comedy recently published, has very laudably endeavoured to render *both* portions of his work into English, and "in such a manner as would best convey the "spirit of the original, without departing far "from its literal meaning." But he justly acknowledges at the same time, that the import of that portion which is intended to be *sung*, is "often very obscure," and that the sense is, or at least appears to be, "sometimes neglected for the sake of a pleasing sound." It is perfectly obvious, that, with respect to any compositions which partake at all of the above character, but a very faint and imperfect image indeed of the pleasure their perusal or performance may afford to a native, can be conveyed to a foreigner through the medium of any translation, however accurate, ingenious, or elaborate.

With respect to the *moral* of the tragedy translated by Father Premare, what is most offensive to the European reader, is undoubtedly the dreadful and systematic spirit of revenge which throughout the piece it expressly recommends and inculcates. In bringing about the catastrophe, the gratification of revenge seems

evidently a primary consideration, and the satisfaction of justice, only a secondary one.

An European dramatist might not perhaps have found much to alter in the catastrophe itself; but he must, in part at least, have brought it about by different means, and certainly have represented the several agents engaged in it, as inspired with different motives.

Before, however, we utterly, or at least, *exclusively* condemn the Chinese for this defect in their moral sense, in thus seeming to encourage and hold up to admiration, a disposition of mind so odious, we must recollect how nearly their sentiments on this subject will be found to correspond with those of the most polished and enlightened nations of antiquity; as well as indeed with those of all the moderns, whose feelings and sentiments have not been humanized and purified by the introduction and establishment of Christianity.

Portland Place.
January, 1821.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

NARRATIVE of a Chinese Embassy from the Emperor of China, *Kang-hee*, to the Khan of the Tourgouth Tartars, seated on the Banks of the Volga, in the years 1712, 13, 14, and 15. By the Chinese Ambassador, and published by the Emperor's authority, at Pekin.

CHAPTER I.

Some Account of the Family of *Tu-li-shin*, the Author of the Narrative—his several official Situations previous to that of Envoy or Ambassador to the Khan of the Tourgouths—occasion of his receiving the latter Appointment—Imperial Edict containing his Instructions . . . . . *Page* 1

CHAPTER II.

Tu-li-shin and his Colleagues set out on their Mission—cross the Great Wall and the Great Sandy Desert—arrive at the Russian Frontier—are met by a Russian Messenger, and shortly after conducted with Military Honours into the town of Selinginsky—Conference with the Governor—Interview with the Merchants of the Russian Caravan proceeding to Pekin—Arrival of a Messenger from Irkutsky, and Interview with him—Departure from Selinginsky, and some Account of that Place 21

CHAPTER III.

Journey to and Description of Udinsky—Passage across and general Description of the Baykal Lake—Arrival of Irkutsky, and Conference with the Governor—Conference with an Officer sent to meet the Envoy from Tobolsky—Departure from Irkutsky under a Military Salute, and Embarkation upon the River Angara—some account of the Town and District of Irkutsky 48

CHAPTER IV.

Description of the River Angara—Arrival at Yeneseik—Reception and Military Honours—Conference with the Governor—some Account of Yeneseik, and Journey thence to Makofsky—Interview with a Russian Officer with certain European Captives under his charge—Embarkation on the Ket, and some Account of that River. 63

CHAPTER V.

Arrival at and Description of Narim—Voyage down the River Oby, as far as Surgute—quit the Oby, and enter the Irtish—some Account of Samarofsky and Demiansky 76

CHAPTER VI.

Arrival at Tobolsky and Ceremonial on the Occasion—Interviews and Conferences with the Governor General of Siberia—and with another Russian Officer, relative to the Interchange of Presents—Entertainment

given to the Envoys by the Governor General on their Departure—and an additional Escort appointed for their Protection 84

CHAPTER VII.

Some Account of the City and Vicinity of Tobolsky—Voyage from thence on the Tobol to Tumen—Arrival at Epantshin—proceed from thence by Land, and arrive at Verchaturia—cross the Oural Mountains and enter European Russia—unexpected Detention at Solikamsky and Conference with Russian Officers thereon—some Account of that Place 108

CHAPTER VIII.

Journey to, and Description of Kaygorod—Slobodskoi—Klinof—Cazan—some Account of these Towns—Remarks on the Laws of the Russians—Continuation of the Journey to Simbirsk—Arrival at, and Description of the Frontier Town of Saratof . . . 121

CHAPTER IX.

Miscellaneous Remarks upon the Russian Empire—Climate—Population—Habits and Customs of the People—Husbandry—National Character—Mode of computing Time—Religious Ceremonies—Origin and Ancient History of the Russians—Date of the Assumption of the Title of Khan—subsequent Conquests—War with Sweden—Battles of Narva and Poltava—Flight of Charles XII. into Turkey—Names of the chief Tribes and Nations bordering on the Russian Territories 133

CHAPTER X.

Dispatch of a Messenger from Saratof to the Head-Quarters of the Tourgouths—Arrival of a Deputation from the Khan of the Tourgouths at Saratof—also of Officers bearing Presents from one of the Tourgouth Princes—Conference with the Officers respecting the Presents—Departure from Saratof, and Journey to the Head-Quarters of the Tourgouths upon the Banks of the Lake Manuto—Extraordinary Honours paid to the Envoys upon their Route—Ceremonial of their Introduction to the Khan, and of the Delivery to him of the Imperial Edict—Particulars of a Conversation with the Khan at that Interview 143

CHAPTER XI.

The Khan desires to see the Mantchoo Tartar Archers in the Suite of the Envoy—their Visit to the Khan—Conference with a Deputation from the Khan—Message from the Khan to the Emperor—Account of Presents received from the Tourgouth Princes—Interview with the Consort of the Khan's eldest Son—Visit from the Khan's youngest Son—Departure from the Head-quarters of the Tourgouths, and Return toward Tobolsky 159

CHAPTER XII.

Some Account of the Country of the Tourgouths—Arrival of the Envoys at Tobolsky—Interview and Conferences with the Governor General of Siberia—Return from Tobolsky to the Chinese Frontier, by the

way of Tara, Tomsky, and Elimsky—Description of those Places, and some Account of the Tartar Tribes in the Vicinity of Tomsky 178

CHAPTER XIII.

Envoys receive Audience from the Emperor on their Return to Pekin—their conduct approved—Official Report of their Proceedings—His Imperial Majesty's Reply 196

CHAPTER XIV.

Tu-li-shin, on his return, finds his Father and Family in health—he attends the Emperor at *Je-ho*, in Tartary—is sent on another Mission to the Russian Frontier, in order to announce the re-commencement of Hostilities between the Emperor and the Prince of the Kalmucs—arrives at Selinginsky, and dispatches from thence a Letter to the Governor General of Siberia . . . 212

APPENDIX;

CONSISTING OF

MISCELLANEOUS TRANSLATIONS.

I. Abstract of the Four First Chapters of a Chinese Novel, entitled *Yu-kiao-lee*; with a concluding Note, respecting the Contents of the remaining Chapters 227

II. Notices of Four Chinese Plays, extracted from a Collection entitled *Yuen-jin-pe-tchong*, viz.

1. The Student's Daughter revenged . . . 243

2. The Stratagems of the Generals whose Forces the River divided 246
3. Leaving a Slipper, on the New Moon . . 247
4. Curing Fish on the Banks of the River, in Autumn 247
III. Extract from a Chinese Botanical Work, or Herbal, entitled *Kuen-fang-poo;* on the Character, Culture, and Uses of the annual herbaceous Cotton 249
IV. Extracts from the Pekin Gazette, &c.
1. Regulation of the Mourning on the Emperor *Kien-lung*'s Decease 258
2. Appointment of an Officer rescinded, on account of his ill health 260
3. Instructions to a General Officer, who had been appointed one of the Ministers of State, to continue nevertheless at his post until further orders . 260
4. Instructions to all Civil and Military Officers to submit their Reports and Addresses immediately to the Emperor, and not through the Supreme Council 261
5. Regulations of the Funeral Procession on the Death of the Emperor *Kien-lung* 262
6. Various Appointments confirmed or superseded 263
7. Degradation of the Viceroy *Quay-lung*, for his maladministration of the Military Affairs in his Province 264
8. The employment of Eunuchs prohibited, except in the Service of the Princes of the Blood, or great Officers of State 266
9. Instructions for an Enquiry into certain Oppressions said to have been practised in the Mode of supplying the Imperial Granaries 267

10. Condemnation of certain Officers for a fraudulent Suppression of the Supplies destined for the Army 267
11. Order for the Maintenance and Promotion to Office, of certain impoverished Descendants of Noble Families 268
12. Further Disgrace and Commitment to Prison of the Viceroy *Quay-lung*, for not having provided for the Safety of his Province, and stopped the progress of the Rebels 268
13. Report of the General *Te-lin-tay* of the Operations of the Imperial Army under his command, against the Rebels in the Province of *She-chuen* . 271
14. Rewards decreed for Military Services performed in the Province of *Yun-nan* 275
15. Order for the better distinguishing of the Names of the Viceroy and Lieutenant General of the Province of *Yun-nan* 276
16. Postponement of the Execution of the Sentences against the late Viceroy of the Province of *Ho-nan*, and the Commander in Chief in the Province of *Hou-pe*, until the ensuing Autumn . . . 276
17. General View of the Charges which had been substantiated against the Viceroy of *Ho-nan* and the General of *Hou-pe* 277
18. Second Report of the General *Te-lin-tay*, containing a further Account of the Operations of the Campaign; the unforeseen obstacles that were encountered; and the final success which, notwithstanding, had attended the dispositions of the Imperial Army 279

19. Recapitulation of the Charges against the Viceroy *Quay-lung*, and Summons of a General Council, to take the same into consideration . . . 286
20. General Approbation of the terms of the Sentence awarded previously against the Viceroy *Quay-lung* by the Council: but for certain reasons, the Council ordered to meet again and revise the same . 292
21. Respectful Offering of *Leu-yeu-zhin*, the Vice-President of the Tribunal of Public Works 293
22. Respectful Offering of *Ky-king*, Viceroy of the Provinces of *Quang-tong* and *Quang-see* . 294
23. Notice from Government that the patriotic Offering of the Merchants of Canton to contribute a Sum towards the extraordinary expenses of the Army would be accepted 295
24. Rewards decreed to the Descendants of certain Officers who had fallen in Battle . . . 296
25. Rank of an Officer reduced:—Remonstrances on the subject of the Operations of the Army prohibited 298
26. Reference to the Records of the Emperor *Kang-hee;* and Animadversions on the Language of the present Military Reports 299
27. Reflections on the Duties of the Sovereign, as connected with the case of the guilty Viceroy of *Sechuen* 302
28. Notice of the Death of the King of *Corea* 304
29. Report of the Sub-viceroy of *Shan-see*, on the subject of Military Stores 304
30. Report of the Viceroy *Fo-kien*, relative to the Ambassador from the *Lieou-kieou* Islands . . 306

31. Degradation of a Prince of the Blood; and Punishment ordered of one of his Domestics . 307
32. Selection of a fortunate Day for the Marriage of one of the Princesses of the Imperial Family 308
33. Seizure of a Peasant who had attempted to gain admittance to the Imperial Presence, on the pretext of presenting a Petition 308
34. Acknowledgment of the Services rendered by the late Viceroy of *Yun-nan*, and regret expressed at his Decease 310
35. Degradation of the Governor of a City, for improper Conduct towards certain of the Inhabitants 313
36. Honorary Appellation decreed to a Temple, where Prayers had been successfully offered up for Rain 316
37. Orders to the Viceroy of *Quang-tong* and *Quang-see* respecting the mode of filling up Military Vacancies 317
38. Imperial Edict issued on the Departure of the British Embassy, in 1793 318
39. Reports relative to certain Letters and Presents transmitted to the Emperor and his Ministers from England, in the year 1805 321
40. Imperial Edict relative to the above Letters and Presents 326

CHRONOLOGICAL INDEX

TO THE

NARRATIVE OF THE CHINESE EMBASSY.

51st of *Kang-hee.*		A.D. 1712. New Style.			
Mooh	Day	Mo.	Day		Page.
4	22	May	27	Received the Emperor's Instructions	8
5	20	June	23	Set out from PEKIN	21
6	2	July	5	Crossed the *Hing-gan-ling* Mountains	22
7	3	Aug.	4	Descended from ditto	28
—	5	—	6	Arrived at the River Tola . . .	30
—	21	—	22	——— Russian Frontiers .	34
—	23	—	24	——— Selinginsky . . .	—
52	—	A.D.	1713		
1	14	Feb.	8	Received the Czar's Dispatches .	41
—	16	—	10	Quitted Selinginsky	42
—	18	—	12	Arrived at Udinsky	48
—	21	—	15	——— the South Bank of the Baykal Lake	30
—	22	—	16	——— the North Bank of ditto	53
—	25	—	19	——— Irkutsky	—
5	4	May	27	Left ditto	60
—	23	June	15	Arrived at Yeneseik	67
—	29	—	21	Left ditto	68
2d 5	2	—	24	Arrived at Makofsky	72
—	5	—	28	Left ditto	73
—	16	July	7	Arrived at Narim	76
—	24	—	15	——— Surgute	77
—	27	—	18	Left ditto	78
—	29	—	20	Arrived at Samarofsky	—
6	22	Aug.	12	——— Demiansky	80
—	25	—	15	Left ditto	82
7	4	—	24	Arrived at TOBOLSKY	84
—	12	Sept.	5	Left ditto	106

* The Dates are adjusted agreeably to the data given in Page 137 of the Narrative.

52d of *Kang-hee.*		A.D. 1713. New Style.			
Moon	Day	Mo.	Day		Page.
7	23	Sept.	16	Arrived at Tumen	112
8	11	—	30	——— Verchaturia	114
—	14	Oct.	3	Left ditto	115
—	18	—	7	Crossed the Oural Mountains, and entered EUROPEAN RUSSIA . . .	116
—	25	—	14	Arrived at Solikamsky	117
10	2	Nov.	18	Left ditto	119
—	5	—	21	Arrived at Kaygorod	121
—	13	—	29	——— Klinof	122
—	15	Dec.	1	Left ditto	124
—	21	—	7	Arrived at Cazan	—
—	30	—	16	Left ditto	128
11	3	—	19	Arrived at Simbirsk	—
—	9	—	25	Left ditto	129
—	16	Jan.	1	Arrived at Saratof	—
53	—	A.D.	1714		
5	6	June	17	Crossed the VOLGA	144
—	20	July	1	Proceed to THE HEAD-QUARTERS OF THE TOURGOUTHS	147
6	1	—	11	Arrived at ditto	—
—	14	—	24	Left ditto	176
7	29	Sept.	7	Arrived at Cazan	—
11	7	Dec.	11	——— TOBOLSKY	180
12	22	Jan.	25	Left ditto	189
—	29	Feb.	1	Arrived at Tara	190
54	—	A.D.	1715		
1	12	—	12	Left ditto	—
—	25	—	26	Arrived at Tomsky	—
2	4	Mar.	6	Left ditto	—
5	29	June	26	Arrived at PEKIN	196

NARRATIVE

OF THE

CHINESE EMBASSY,

ENTITULED

YEE-YU-LOO.

CHAPTER I.*

Some Account of the Family of TU-LI-SHIN, *the Author of the Narrative—his several official Situations previous to that of Envoy or Ambassador to the Khan of the Tourgouths—Occasion of his receiving the latter Appointment—Imperial Edict containing his Instructions.*

I, TU-LI-SHIN, lately an Assistant Secretary to the Council of State, but now an Assistant

* The division into chapters, and the short abstract of their contents prefixed to each, are introduced for the convenience of the reader; but are not in the original text. The original title is also very inadequate, being confined to the three words above quoted.

The translator has found this work registered under the above title in the Chinese printed and published catalogue of one of the principal imperial libraries at Pekin; but the only allu-

Extraordinary in the Supreme Court for Military Affairs, and promoted by special favour to the

sion to it which he has been able to meet with in any European publication is in the Mémoires sur les Chinois, vol. i. p. 408. in a note by the Missionary, Father Amiot, in which he quotes the authority of Toulichen, *dans la Relation de son Voyage.*

The name, however, of the ambassador and narrator *Toulichen*, or *Tulishin*, frequently occurs in the works of the missionaries, and of the other historians of the Chinese of that period. The circumstances which led to his appointment to the present mission are thus briefly stated in Moyrac de Mailla's Histoire de la Chine, vol. xi. p. 581. "Le Tourgouts, une "des quatre branches des *Eleutes* qui obéissoient au Tchong-"Kar (ou roi des Eleutes), avoient un roi ou *Han* particulier, "nommé Ayouki, lequel mécontent de *Tse-vang-Rabdan*, dont "il vouloit secouer le joug tyrannique, forma le projet de se "soustraire pour toujours à la domination des Eleutes. Il se "sauva avec tous les siens sur les terres de l'empire des Russes, "qui leur permirent de s'établir, dans le pays d'Etchil, entre "le Volga et le Jaik, à peu de distance de la Mer Caspienne. "Kang-hi voulant savoir de ce prince, pour quelle raison il "avoit abandonné son pays natal, *lui envoya le Mandarin Touli-*"*chen*, avec ordre le l'assurer de sa protection, s'il avoit des-"sein de revenir." *Tu-li-shin* appears to have acquitted himself upon this service entirely to his sovereign's satisfaction; and we find him again employed in a confidential situation, of a somewhat similar nature, on the occasion of the subsequent embassy from Russia in 1720, having been appointed to meet the embassy at Selenginsky, and afterwards to conduct it from the Chinese frontier to Pekin.

The following account of *Tu-li-shin's* first interview with the Russian embassy speaks favourably of his general abili-

office of an Assessor in the department called *Chee-fang-see*, am originally from the country of *Ye-ho*, in Tartary.

My ancestor, *O-yen Kio-lo-she*, was a man honorably distinguished in the country of *Ye-ho* by his fidelity and exertions. He was

ties, and is at the same time quite characteristic of Chinese diplomacy. "The 24th [June, 1720,] arrived an officer from the Court of Pekin, sent on purpose to discover the number and quality of the embassy. This gentleman, whose name was *T'u-li-shin*, was a Mandshú Tartar by birth, and a member of the Tribunal for Western Affairs, with which he was very well acquainted. These officers are called *Surgutsky* by the Mongals, and by the Europeans, Mandarins; a Portugueze word derived from *Mando*. He had formerly been in this country, and had learned the Russian language. He pretended to have been employed on some business with the *Tush-du-chan* at Urga, and hearing of the ambassador's arrival, had come to pay his respects to him. It was, however, well known, that he was sent to enquire whether the ambassador came on a friendly errand. He was received very kindly; and, after he had staid three days, and made his observations, returned very well satisfied. At his departure he told the ambassador, that orders would soon be given for his reception on the frontiers; but these could not be issued till his arrival at court, because on his report the whole affair depended. This wise and cautious nation, jealous of all the world, suffer none to enter their territories, but such as bring friendly messages. By this circumstance we were confined sometime longer at Selenginsky."—*Bell's Travels*, vol. i. p. 357.

welcomed and entertained as a guest by the sovereign of the country. But in the north east the Imperial *Lung* (dragon) arose, the Imperial *Fung Whang* (phœnix) took wing. It was the will of heaven that all the countries in that quarter should be subjected to the great dynasty of *Tsing*.* The great and sacred personage therefore came forth, and they were severally reduced under his sovereign rule and authority. The Six *Ho* had however begun to enjoy the gracious protection of his government, even before the period of the final settlement of the imperial dynasty. All the tribes and chieftains of *Ching-King* (Mougden) were favourably disposed for an improving change in their condition, and well inclined towards virtue: justly fearful indeed of incurring the consequences of a tardy submission, they paid voluntary homage to the Emperor's superiority, and thus testified their impatience to partake of the sublime and boundless favors of his supreme government.

* The original seat of the reigning Mantchoo Tartar dynasty is to the north-east of China. The invasion and conquest of the empire by the Mantchoo Tartars is here figuratively described by an allusion to the *lung*, a fabulous reptile, and the *fung whang*, a fabulous bird, which, with the Chinese, are the peculiar emblems of sovereignty.

They have since continued from generation to generation to enjoy offices and emolument under the imperial crown.

I was born in the year *Ting-Vee*,* of the reign of the Emperor *Kang-hee* (A. D. 1667). When I was young, my family was poor, and I was myself of a weak and sickly constitution. As soon, however, as I had arrived at the proper age, I engaged regularly in the study and exercise of the Mantchoo Tartar and Chinese languages, but I never was able to attain to any very considerable proficiency. Having, however, persevered, conformably with the established rules, in the constant employment of translating, I was after a time admitted within the precincts of the imperial palace, and nominated one of the translators of Chinese ancient history.

The next year I passed my examination, and was appointed one of the clerks of the office for editing public records. From that date I received for 10 years a regular stipend from government. In the course of this period I was

* The Chinese count by cycles of 60 years, in which each year has an appropriate name; by adding therefore to the name of the year that of the reigning emperor, the precise period of any event may be stated without a recourse to numbers, which the Chinese consider as inelegant, and, if possible, avoid.

employed upon several detached services. At one time I was dispatched by the emperor's orders to the provinces of *Shan-see* and *Shen-see*, to distribute largesses during a famine. At another I was appointed to the office of visiting and inspecting the banks of the Southern (or Yellow) River, and also to that of superintending the manufacture of military accoutrements. The publication of an edict of grace was, moreover, once confided to me, and I was afterwards promoted to a higher degree in my original office, my allowances being at the same time increased, and the special charge given to me of the seals of the department.

It happened that on the day when I was first presented to his Majesty at court, one of the assistant secretaryships to the Council of State became vacant; and the councillors having been pleased to recommend me as worthy of some mark of royal favour, the Emperor was graciously moved to promote me in consequence to that superior office. I was, about the same time, appointed to enquire into certain deficient branches of revenue, and after accomplishing that service, but previous to my return to the capital, I was nominated to the superintendance and custody of the sacred animals belonging to the department of the Supreme Court of Rites

and Ceremonies. Unfortunately, my talents and capacity proved inadequate to the proper discharge of my several duties, and I failed to answer the expectations which the Emperor in his gracious goodness had formed when he thus selected and employed me. Having been in consequence censured and dismissed altogether from the public service, I retired to *Lin-loo*, where I remained for seven years and upwards, devoting my time to the cultivation of my farm and to the service of my parents.

At length when it was determined, in the year *Pao-tien*, a year of universal tranquillity and pacification, to send a special mission to the kingdom of the Tourgouths, a region remote and beyond the seas (or great waters), I humbly addressed a petition to his Majesty, requesting to be employed on the occasion, that I might thus have an opportunity of evincing the grateful sense I entertained of the many favours I had at former periods enjoyed under the imperial government.* Being admitted in consequence to

* It might seem extraordinary that a degraded officer should presume to solicit an appointment of this important and confidential character; but a distant foreign mission is a service so little desirable in the eyes of a Chinese, that it became highly meritorious in any officer of suitable abilities to volunteer his services on the occasion, and it appears accordingly that *Tu-li-*

the imperial presence, I had again the happiness of witnessing the benign influence and excellent effects of the sacred virtues of his Majesty. By his Majesty's gracious favor I was restored to my former rank and offices, and further honored with his Majesty's special commands to proceed upon the service I had solicited.

On the 22d day of the 4th moon of the 51st year of *Kang-Hee*, I received the following sacred and imperial instructions, addressed to myself and colleagues:

IMPERIAL EDICT.

"On your arrival at your destination you are to enquire after the health of *Ayukee*, and then to notify to him, that in execution of our desire to provide for the return of the Prince *O-la-pu-chu-eur** to his native country, we directed the persons in the suite of the prince to make enquiries on the subject of the Russian merchant *Ha-mi-sa-eur*, and that we have since learnt that the necessary arrangement for the prince's return by the way of the Russian dominions are already in preparation. You will then proceed thus—'The proofs you have given of your zeal and

shin's offer was not only immediately accepted, but that he was himself entirely restored to favour in consequence.

* For the history of this prince, see note to Chapter VI.

sincerity by sending *Sa-mo-tan* and others to China, to offer presents and make complimentary enquiries, are highly applauded by his Majesty, though he laments the trouble they have cost you; and his Majesty has in consequence sent the Eleuth *Shu-ko-mi-se* and us to your country, to promulgate to you an imperial edict, and at the same time to deliver to you some marks of his imperial favour.'

"As to what remains to be adjusted respecting the return of *O-la-pu-chu-eur*, the officer in waiting, *Kee-lee-te*, has already been sent to the country of *Tse-vang-La-pu-tan* (Tse-vang-Rabdan*), to negociate on the subject, but he is not

* *Tsevang-Rabdan* was the chief of the most considerable branch of the Eleuth or Calmuc Tartars; and although it suited the Emperor of China's policy to speak slightingly and even contemptuously of him in these instructions, he was undoubtedly at this time one of the most powerful princes of Asia; and in the war which soon after broke out between the Calmucs and the Chinese, and is alluded to at the close of this narrative, he appears to have been completely successful. These hostilities were renewed under his son and successor, of whom the "Histoire de la Chine" makes the following remark: "Ce même Han, préférant l'indépendance aux avantages d'un commerce avec la Chine, osa braver la puissance de *Kang-hi*, et s'attira une guerre que son père et lui soutenirent avec une bravoure et une habilité qui durent faire juger à leurs ennemis par les sommes qu'elle leur coûta et les pertes qu'ils essuyerent, combien il est difficile de réduire une nation qui combat pour sa liberté."—vol. xi. p. 4, note. The glory of a final conquest over this powerful and warlike tribe, which

yet returned. As soon as the result of his mission is known, it shall be communicated to you.

"Should he (*A-yu-kee*) express to you a wish for our assistance in any hostile operations against *Tse-vang-Rabdan*, you are by no means to make any promises or to listen to any proposals of that nature, but are thus to reply:—'*Tse-vang-Rabdan* is upon very friendly terms with his Imperial Majesty. He frequently sends envoys with complimentary enquiries, and they are always received at court, and honored with presents and other marks of imperial favor. As to his strength and resources, he, no doubt, is weak, straitened, and helpless in the extreme; but our most excellent master does not therefore desire to make war against him and subdue him. The affair you propose is one of great magnitude, and one in which it would not be proper for us to concur. You may, indeed, if you choose, lay the matter before his Sacred Eminence, but it is our opinion that our Emperor, desiring nothing more than that all nations

Kang-hi and his successor sought in vain, was, however, reserved for his grandson, the late Emperor *Kien-long*, who, in the year 1759, reduced them into complete subjection; and as the Tourgouths tendered a voluntary submission a few years after, the whole of the Calmuc or Eleuth tribes may, with little if any exception, be considered as included within the limits of the Chinese empire ever since that period.

under heaven should enjoy peace and tranquillity, has no intention whatever of occasioning to *Tse-vang-Rabdan* any disturbance. Indeed, we can pledge ourselves that this is the case.'

" In your interviews with *A-yu-kee*, you will observe the same interchange of ceremony and civilities as were observed on the occasion of similar communications with *Tse-vang-Rabdan;* if presents are offered you, you will exercise your judgment and discretion in respect to your acceptance of them.

" If in the course of your journey, either going or returning, the *Cha-han-Khan*,* of the kingdom of Russia should send messengers to you, to express his desire to see and confer with you, you will proceed without delay to meet him accordingly. Whether the whole of your party shall proceed upon this occasion, or some

* Peter the 1st, Czar, and afterwards Emperor, of Russia. *Cha-han* is probably a Chinese corruption of the Russian title of Czar. It may be proper here to notice that the characters of the Chinese language are peculiarly inadequate to the correct expression of foreign sounds, and the translator has had therefore considerable difficulty in recognizing and verifying the names of several of the places and persons which occur in this narrative. In most cases he has felt it most advisable to retain the precise pronunciation of the Chinese characters employed, repeating the name afterwards (whenever it could be found) more correctly written according to the European usage.

select persons only, must depend upon the nature of his message to you; but it will be proper that *Na-yen Tu-li-shin*, with two of the newly enrolled Mantchoo Tartars should be of the number. If he happens not to be desirous to see you, and consequently sends no messengers to invite you to a conference, it is very immaterial. As to the order and ceremonial of your reception it may be conformable to the customs and ceremonies of that country. You will particularly mention to the messenger of the Khan, that formerly when *Mi-ko-lai** of his kingdom

* The translator has not been able to find any trace of a negociator of the name of Mikolai in any of the histories of this period. The Russian plenipotentiaries, Theodore Alexiovitz, &c. who were appointed to adjust the national boundaries, and who signed the treaty for that purpose with the Chinese in 1689, did not proceed beyond the frontier; and Isbrand Ives, who was afterwards sent to Pekin, in quality of ambassador, in 1692, with a view of improving the commercial advantages stipulated for by that treaty, is not likely to have offended in any question concerning the ceremonial. The historian of that expedition, on the occasion of the imperial audience, tells us that "the ambassador being reconducted by the *Adogeda* to his seat, the Chinese, all on a sudden, placed themselves on the right side upon their bended knees, knocking their heads against the ground three times, whilst the Bogdegan (Emperor) was descending from the throne. We were led by the two Adogedas to the same place, *where we were obliged to perform the same ceremony*."—p. 93, edition of 1698. The most probable con-

came to China, his conduct was very perverse and reprehensible, but that you are far from intending to follow his example.

" On the occasion of your interview with the *Cha-han-khan,* if you are asked what we principally esteem and reverence in China, you may thus reply :—' In our empire fidelity, filial piety, charity, justice, and sincerity are esteemed above all things. We revere and abide by them. They are the principles upon which we administer the empire as well as govern ourselves. In the face of danger we firmly adhere to them. There have been many who have even fearlessly encountered death rather than abandon them. We likewise make sacrifices and oblations; we

jecture is that the above-named Mikolai was one of those offenders, to whose excesses Mr. Coxe, in his History of Russian Discoveries, Transactions and Commerce in those parts, has thus alluded: " Repeated complaints of the drunkenness and misconduct of the Russians were transmitted to the Emperor of China. The complaints thus presented made a still greater impression from a coincidence of similar excesses, for which the Russians at Pekin had become notorious. Exasperated by the frequent representations of his subjects, *Camhi* threatened to expel the Russians from his dominions, and prohibit them from carrying on any commerce as well with China as in the country of the Mongols. These untoward circumstances occasioned another embassy to Pekin (the narrative of which is given by Bell) in 1719."—p. 442.

pray for good things and we deprecate evil things; but if we did not act honestly, if we were not faithful, pious, charitable, just and sincere, of what avail would be our prayers and sacrifices! In our empire, fidelity, filial piety, charity, justice, and sincerity are our ruling principles, the objects of our veneration, and the constant guides of our conduct. In our empire, therefore, there is no hostile array of shields and spears, no severe punishments are inflicted; we have now for a long time enjoyed uninterrupted peace and tranquillity.'*

"If you are asked respecting the arts and productions of China, you may take the opportunity of making the following remarks:—.

"'It is with us as with other countries, some districts are rich, others are poor: but we heard some years ago that your kingdom of Russia was not at peace with its neighbours, and was engaged in actual hostilities. It may be that your kingdom is desirous of detaching and em-

* The above may be considered as a sort of summary of the Confucian system of faith. The disclaimer of intestine wars, and of the infliction of severe punishments against offenders, must be taken with some allowance, but the opposition which had for a considerable time been made to the establishment of the new dynasty had certainly ceased, and the empire was generally in a state of tranquillity.

ploying its frontier forces, but being suspicious of our frontier forces, forbears to do so. We can assure you, however, that his Imperial Majesty entertains no designs whatever which are inconsistent with the peace which has now been established for many years between our respective empires. You may therefore immediately remove and employ your frontier troops, if you see occasion to do so, without the least hesitation or uneasiness. The requisite orders have likewise been given to the Commander-in-Chief on the banks of the *He-lung-Kiang*,* to communicate regularly with your empire by the way of the frontier city of *Ni-pu-tchoo* (Niptchou.)'

" If any enquiries are made to you concerning [our peculiar attentions to] the aged, you may reply as follows:—

"'Our Emperor every year seeks out and distinguishes those who are remarkably aged. Each time from 20 to 30 are selected who have attained to the age of one hundred years, and more than 10,000 are generally found in each province who have exceeded the age of ninety: they are all suitably favoured and rewarded.'

* The Amour of the Russians; and Sagalien-Oula (literally Black Dragon River) of the Mantchoo Tartars.

" If enquiry is made respecting the imperial chase, you may reply:—

" ' Our Emperor hunts every year. His suite of huntsmen and his military escort are all mounted upon horses belonging to government, and daily allowances are made to them to the extent of their expenses. In the evening the orders are given; the next morning they are all assembled and ready to proceed without the smallest delay or impediment. Government provides every thing they stand in need of; nothing embarrasses them; nothing is required of them but their personal exertions. It is exactly the same also with us envoys upon this present occasion; our equipage, and all the other supplies required for our journey, we owe to the Emperor's bounty; our personal exertions are all he ever requires from us.'

" We think Russia may probably speak to you of fire arms, artillery, and such like. Should assistance of this kind be solicited, you may remark:—

" ' The length of the way is extremely great; the road is over high mountains and rugged rocks, through forests, marshes, and other dangerous and difficult passes without number. In our country there are no such places, nor have we ever before seen roads of a similar descrip-

tion. All communications by such routes is extremely difficult; besides which, according to the laws of China, fire arms and all similar articles are prohibited goods; their exportation beyond the frontier is never permitted. The laws of the empire are so very strict and severe, that even if our Emperor were graciously to be pleased to make you presents of this description, they could hardly be conveyed hither to you.'

" If they still press you to report to us their request, it will be sufficient for you to answer:—

" ' We, all of us, are now specially employed upon a mission to the residence of *A-yu-kee*, the Khan of the Tourgouth Tartars. We can hardly therefore venture to take upon ourselves to address his Majesty upon subjects which are so totally unconnected therewith.'

" As the Russians are of a vain and ostentatious disposition, they will doubtless display before you, for your information, the several things they possess. On such occasions you are neither to express admiration nor contempt; and are merely to say, ' whether our country possesses or not such things as these, it is quite out of our province to determine; some things indeed there are which we have seen, and others have not seen; but there are other things again which others have seen, though we have not. On

these subjects therefore we are by no means sufficiently informed.'

"In your proceedings upon the service to which you are at present appointed, there must be perfect harmony and concord amongst you; you must refrain from drinking wine immoderately and you must strictly prohibit all excesses of this kind among your servants and attendants. In the course of your journey you will have to enter certain districts of the kingdom of Russia, where the manners and customs are extremely corrupt, and where there are many immodest women. Your servants and attendants must not be suffered on these occasions to be disorderly and licentious; and at all times you must maintain strict discipline and control over them. If, while you are within the Russian territories, you should yourselves chance to see any of the women of the country, or to witness any occurrence that may seem absurd in your eyes, you are nevertheless to preserve always your gravity and composure, and by no means to be lightly given to scoffing or ridicule.

"If presents are offered to you, you are not at once to accept of them, but to excuse yourselves again and again; saying, 'we have brought nothing rich or valuable with us to offer to the *Cha-han-Khan;* how then can we

think of accepting such presents from him?' In the event, however, of their being very earnest and pressing, you may accept of one or two things; and you are in such case to produce the pieces of embroidered silks which you are to carry with you, and to present them to the *Chahan-Khan* in return, saying,—' because of the great length of the journey we have brought nothing with us that is very excellent or valuable; these things we only offer as a trifling mark of our consideration on the occasion of the present meeting.' Should you not be invited to an interview, and only a messenger be sent to you, you will still take occasion to present the pieces of silk which you will have brought with you; and you will say, ' having come a very long journey, we have nothing in our possession of value, but we offer you these trifles as a mark of our consideration.'

" The laws and regulations of the Russians are very severe and rigorous. In the event therefore of any of your servants or attendants committing a trifling fault, you must not at once denounce them in anger to the magistrate of the district. In all your proceedings you must show your clemency and moderation as well as your gravity and composure.

" If you are questioned respecting your own

rank and offices, you are to say, 'we are only officiating magistrates belonging to the outer tribunals of government, and by no means either great officers of state, or immediate attendants on the person of his Majesty.'

"The inhabitants of the Russian territory, its natural and artificial productions, its geography and general appearance, are also objects to which due attention is to be given by you in the course of your journey. Respect the above."

CHAPTER II.

Tu-li-shin and his Colleagues set out on their Mission—cross the Great Wall and the Great Sandy Desert—arrive at the Russian Frontier—are met by a Russian Messenger, and shortly after conducted with Military Honors into the town of Selinginsky—Conference with the Governor—Interview with the Merchants of the Russian Caravan proceeding to Pekin—Arrival of a Messenger from Irkutsky, and Interview with him—Departure from Selinginsky, and some Account of that Place.

Having received from the Ministers of State the imperial letter addressed to *A-yu-kee-Khan*, and likewise our military guard and allotment of government horses, we finally quitted the imperial city on the 20th of the 5th moon of the year *Jin-shin* (A. D. 1712, the 51st of the reigning Emperor *Kang-hee*.)

My father and brothers, as well as several of my other relations and friends, were pleased, upon our setting out from the imperial city, to accompany us as far as the temple *Pe-kee-she*, where being unable to part from our friends

abruptly, we were induced to remain with them some time. It was impossible in consequence of this delay to proceed much further before dark, and we therefore took up our quarters for the night at *Sha-ho.**

On the 6th day of our journey we crossed the great wall at the pass called *Chang-Kia-Keu.*†

On the 2d day of the 6th moon we crossed the range of mountains called *Hing-gan-ling*, and entered the district of *Cha-ho-eur Ho-mo-hee*, belonging to the Tartars of the plain Yellow Division. Here we were received and entertained by the officers of the Mongou Tartar‡

* "On the 17th (November, 1720,) we came to a small town called Shach."—*Bell,* vol. i. p. 435.

† This pass is in the province of *Pe-che-lee,* about an hundred miles to the westward of that of *Kou-pe-keou,* by which the embassy of Lord Macartney crossed the wall in 1793.

‡ "The [Mongou or] Mongals are a numerous people, and occupy a large extent of country, from this place (Selinginsky) to the Kalgan, which signifies the everlasting wall, or the great wall of China. From this wall they stretch themselves northward as far as the river Amour, and from the Amour westward to the Baykall Sea [lake], where they border with the territories of the Kontasha, [Tse-vang-Rabdan of this narrative], or Prince of the Black Calmucs. On the south they are bounded by a nation called Tonguts, among whom the Delay-Lama has his residence. One may easily imagine, from the vast tract of land which the

garrison of *Cha-ha-eur*, and supplied with horses, camels, tents and sheep, as many as we required

Mongals occupy, that they must be very numerous, especially when it is considered that they live in a healthy climate, and have been engaged in no wars since they were conquered partly by the Russians on the west and partly by the Chinese on the east, to whom all these people are now tributaries. In former times the Mongals were troublesome neighbours to the Chinese, against whose incursions the great wall was built. Camhi, the present Emperor of China, was the first who subdued these hardy Tartars, which he effected more by kind usage and humanity than by the sword; for these people are great lovers of liberty. The same gentle treatment hath been observed by the Russians towards those of them who are their subjects. And they themselves confess, that, under the protection of these two mighty Emperors, they enjoy more liberty, and live more at ease than they formerly did under their own princes.

"The present Prince of Mongalia is called *Tush-du-chan*, and resides about six days' journey to the south-east from Selinginsky. The place is called *Urga*, and is near to where the *Kutuchtu*, or high priest, inhabits. When the Mongals submitted themselves to the Emperor of China, it was agreed that the *Tush-du-chan* should still maintain the name and authority of a prince over his people, but undertake no war nor expedition without consent of the Emperor; which has strictly been observed ever since.

"It is very remarkable that in all the vast dominions of Mongalia, there is not so much as a single house to be seen. All the people, even the prince and high priest, live constantly in tents, and remove all their cattle from place to place as conveniency requires.

"These people do not trouble themselves with ploughing or

for the prosecution of our journey. We therefore dismissed at this place all the government horses we had brought with us from the interior, and also our guards of the Green Division, and dispatched them back to Pekin.

After a journey from hence of more than ten days, we arrived at the district of *Pa-yeñ Pulake*, belonging to O-la-putan, Prince of the *Koeur-ko* (Kalkas).*

digging the ground in any fashion, but are content with the produce of their flocks. Satisfied with necessaries, without aiming at superfluities, they pursue the most ancient and simple manner of life, which, I must confess, I think very pleasant in such a wild and dry climate."—*Bell's Travels*, vol. i. p. 334.

* "These Tartars (who formerly composed a numerous tribe consisting of more than six hundred thousand families) inhabit to the north of the Mogul Tartars, whom we have just mentioned." "The Kalkas live under tents along the banks of the rivers which water their country: that of *Kalka-pira*, though one of the smallest, and at present one of the least frequented, has given its name to the whole nation." "The war which the king of the Eleuths [The Kaldan, uncle to *Tse-vang-Rabdan* of the text,] carried on in 1688, against the Kalkas, almost destroyed the whole nation. To avoid the pursuit of a superior enemy, they begged the assistance of the Chinese arms, and offered to submit to the empire. Kang-hi undertook their defence, conquered [defeated] the King of the Eleuths, and kept the Kalka Tartars under his dominion, after having conferred upon their princes different titles of honour." —*Grosier's China*, vol. i. p. 173—177.

Here the officers of the *Ko-eur-ko* garrison received and entertained us, supplying us also with a stock of sheep, as well as with the requisite number of horses and camels to carry us forward on our journey.

In this district, which lies above the mountainous district of *Hing-gan*,* there is a peculiar range of rocky hills, on which is found growing the tree called *Kin-tao-pee.*

In two days journey from the last district we came to that of *See-la-pu-lee-tu*,† which for more than 10 lee distance appeared to be a mere barren sand.

On the 16th day of the moon we reached the district of *O-eur-ho Lin-lu Ku-pu-eur*, on the southern side of the *Han-hay*, or Great Desert of Sand.‡

* Hinkan Tabahan of D'Anville.

† Sira-pouritou of D'Anville. The Chinese lee may be roughly estimated at a tenth of a league of three geographical miles.

‡ Mr. Bell, in his journal, complains much of the difficulties and inconveniencies sustained by the Russians in crossing this inhospitable tract. "After leaving the banks of the river Tola," he observes, "we soon entered the desert commonly named by the Mongals the *Hungry* Desert; how far it deserves that title will be seen as we advance." He appears to have overlooked the shrub, *Chake*, mentioned in this narrative, as he speaks of no other vegetation having been observed, but "some tufts of withered grass" in this part of his journey. He mentions several salt pools or lakes, but only a few springs or brooks of fresh

On the 17th we came to a spot in the center of the Desert called *Chu-eur-whey.** In this spot is found in abundance the shrub *chake*, and also small pebbles of various colours. The *chake* rises to the height of 5 *che*† from the ground. The substance of the wood is extremely hard, the bark similar to that of the *Nuon-Moo*, and the leaves like those of the willow.

This district is watered by two or three rivulets, which uniting form in the centre a small pool or lake of sweet and limpid water, which seems much frequented by water fowl. The appearance of this spot made us forget the surrounding Desert, and think we were again in China.

On the 18th we reached the northern extremity of the Desert, and entered the district of *O-nang Pu-la-ke.*

Three or four days after, we entered the dis-

water; and occasional hillocks of sand were the only inequalities of the surface. He concludes with the following remark: "this is now the 40th day since we left the border; during which time we had not halted one day, nor seen a single house; and it is the 28th since we quitted the river Tola, and entered the Desert, in which we had neither seen river, tree, bush, nor mountain."—vol. i. p. 408.

* Probably the Chi-burtai of D'Anville.

† Cubits of 14 inches nearly.

trict of *Na-la-te-tchi-lao.* The land here is totally unproductive and uninhabitable; a boundless waste, as far as the sight could reach, in every direction. One thing, however, we saw in this district which was very remarkable, a mountain above 10 lees in circumference at its base, consisting of stones lying over each other in successive scales or layers, like the skin of the *Puon* snake, and appearing as if they had been arranged in this manner by the labour of man. A small stream issues at the foot of this mountain. Ten lees south of this spot, at *Hiu Hu Nasetai*, two species of the stone called *yng-she* are found, the black and the white. Seeing these stones, I was desirous to possess some of them, and not adverting to the great trouble and inconvenience attending the carriage of such heavy articles, I picked up about ten of the best specimens, and making a package of them, gave them into the charge of the *Taiki* [officer] *Van-shu-ke.*

At the end of three days more we came to the district of *Ta-poo-soo-tai*, where we were met by the *Pei-le* (prince) *Vang-cha-eur*, who immediately on seeing us made enquiries after the health of his Imperial Majesty; and then, having pitched his tents, he ordered some sheep and oxen to be killed, and otherwise provided for our entertainment. He noticed particularly the

new Mantchoo marksmen who were in our suite, and did not finally take his leave till after he had accompanied us 10 lees on our journey.

On the third day's journey from this spot the land became gradually less elevated; and on the third day of the seventh moon we reached *O-she-ling-Pu-lee-too*, the northern termination of the range of mountains called *Hing-gan-ling*, and proceeded thence to *Ku-eur Pu-lee-too*, the district lying immediately east of the mountains of *Han-shan*.

About 20 lees to the south-east of this spot is *Chao-mo-to*,* a place signalized by the final de-

* *Chao-mo-do* of D'Anville. This battle between the Chinese and Eleuths, under the Kaldan, uncle to *Tse-vang-Rabdan*, the reigning prince, occurred in 1696, and is thus related by Moyriac de Mailla in his "Histoire de la Chine." "Le 22 de la 5 lune, ce prince [Kang-hy] reçu la nouvelle d'une victoire remportée par le General *Feyangkoo* sur le *Kaldan* au pays de *Tchao-modo*. Le 11 de la même lune *Fe-yang-koo* avoit envoyé Ponta, avec un Kalka, à la découverte, pour savoir de quel côté le *Kaldan* s'étoit retiré. Cet officier qui s'étoit avancé jusqu'à l'embouchure de la rivière de Tereltchi, ayant appris la position critique du Kaldan, et la terreur que lui inspiroit l'approche de l'armée commandée par l'Empereur, on avoit instruit le grand général, qui avoit sur le champ détaché le Lieutenant-Général *Chétäi*, avec *Henanta* et *Hohe*, en leur ordonnant de suivre de près les ennemis, et de les engager à une action s'il présentoit une occasion favourable. Chétäi les ayant trouvés trop supérieurs en force, s'étoit contenté de faire sur eux

feat and extirpation of the rebel *Ko-eur-tan* (Kal-dan). On each side of the road the land

une décharge; et tournant bride comme s'il fuyoit, il s'etoit replié vers *Tchao-modo*, où il savoit que le grand général étoit près d'arriver. Celui-ci informé que *Chétäi* avoit attiré le *Kaldan* sur ses traces, met les troupes en mouvement pour aller occuper le sommet d'une montagne; et ayant fait mettre pied à terre à la cavalerie, il attendit le *Kaldan*, qui poursuivoit *Chétäi* l'épée dans les reins à la tête de dix mille hommes. Ce chef des Eleuthes attaqua le gros de l'armée avec beaucoup d'ardeur et de bravoure, quoiqu'elle fût supérieure à la sienne, et qu'elle fît bonne contenance, persuadé que n'ayant point à combattre l'Empereur en personne il obtiendroit facilement la victoire: il tenta de déloger les impériaux du poste avantageux qu'ils occupoient; mais le feu soutenu de leur mousquetrie et de leur pièces de campagne, depuis deux heures après midi que commença l'action jusqu'au soir, ayant entâmé ses rangs, le désordre se communiqua d'un corps à l'autre, et il fût contraint de faire retraite. Alors *Féyang-Kou* fit monter à cheval ses cavaliers, et descendant la montagne au grand trot, il fondit sur les fuyards qu'il poursuivit plus de trente *ly* jusqu'à l'embouchure du *Téreltchi*. Les Eleuthes laissèrent deux mille hommes sur le champ de bataille, et en leur prit beaucoup d'armes, de baggages et de bestiaux. L'Empereur reçut à cette occasion les félicitations de toute son armée."—vol. xi. p. 211.

It only remains to remark that the Kaldan, who was here defeated by the imperial forces, and in the courtly style of the text is described as a rebel, was undoubtedly at that period an independent prince; though, agreeably to the presumptuous claims of the Chinese to universal sovereignty, his opposition to their arms was immediately stigmatized as no ordinary warfare, but rather as an odious and unnatural rebellion.

was now generally level, with hills of a moderate height occurring occasionally, and well-wooded vallies intervening between them. A small stream winded along the feet of the hills and seemed to make the circuit of the principal vallies.

At length, on the fifth of the moon, we reached the bank of the river *Tu-la.**

Here we found the river so much swollen by the rains which had fallen lately, that it would have been extremely difficult, if not impossible, to ford it. There were, besides, no boats to carry passengers over, and we were consequently obliged to wait at this spot three days, until the waters had somewhat subsided. During this leisure time we took the opportunity of fishing in the river *Tu-la*, and caught between 10 and 20 of the *loo-yu* and *wha-yu*. Having ordered the fish, which were in general about two *che* (cubits) in length, to be dressed for our eating, we found them extremely rich and well-flavoured. During this period also *Ko-tcha-eur-too* was sent to the *Han-shan* hills with a gun to shoot deer, and the one he brought back with him was dressed and divided among our party.

The river *Tu-la* takes its rise to the right of the mountains of *Ken-te*, and flowing in a west-

* Tola of Bell.—Vol. i. p. 389.

erly direction falls into the river Orhon *(Go-eur-when)*, the source of which is in the mountains of *Hang-gay-han.* There is another river called *He-lu-lun* (Kerlon), which rises to the left of the *Ken-te* mountains, and taking an easterly course falls into the lake *Hu-lun.** From the *Hu-lun* there again issues a river called *Ge-eur-ku-na* (D'Ergone, or D'Argun), which, running to the north-east, finally discharges itself into the *He-lung-kiang* (the Sagalien, or Amoor.)

The Orhon, after its junction with the Tula, takes a winding course towards the abode of the high priest or *Hu-tu-chtu Che-pu-tsun Tan-mupa*, and the districts in the occupation of the wandering tribes of *Tu-sie-tu-han*† (Tush-du-chan of Bell). This river ultimately takes a north-westerly direction and falls into the Se-

* Dalai Nor, or Koulon Nor—Grosier, vol. i. p. 174.

† "The present prince of Mongalia is called *Tush-du-chan*, and resides about six days' journey to the south-east from Selinginsky. The place is called *Urga*, and is near to where the *Kutuchtu* or high priest inhabits. When the Mongals submitted themselves to the Emperor of China, it was agreed that the *Tush-du-chan* should still maintain the name and authority of a prince over his people, but undertake no war nor expedition without consent of the Emperor, which has strictly been observed ever since."—*Bell*, vol. i. p. 336.

lingue (*Se-ling-ke*). A range of hills occupies the remaining space between this junction and the Russian boundary. The northern bank of the Tu-la is also mountainous throughout. The *Se-ur-pee* are three deep vallies or glens, and the *Sung-kee-na* are three remarkable ridges into which these mountains are divided. Many of the passes here are very difficult and dangerous, and some of the rocks rise abruptly to a vast and inaccessible height. In the intervening vallies the herbage is rich and luxuriant, variegated with abundance of flowers like a picture, and attracting the eye with the gayest colours. The farther recesses between the hills are thickly wooded with the *san* (larch), the *sung* (the fir), the *ma-wee sung* (literally, horse-tail pine), and the *yang wha* (black poplar), whose dark and close foliage produce in the back ground a deep and impenetrable obscurity.

Besides the rivers abovementioned, various lesser streams, such as the *Po-ur-ho-la*, the *See-la*, the *Yee-loo-eur*, the *Yee-pang*, and others, have their sources in these mountains, and pouring down their clear and rapid torrents, they discharge themselves either into the Tu-la, the Orhon, or the Selingue. The banks of these streams are thickly overgrown with willows; and vari-

ous kinds of fish, such as the *wha*, the *lo*, the *lee*, the *tsie*, the *shen*, and the *whee*, are found in these waters.

Ten days after we had crossed the river Tul-a, we reached the station of *Po-la*, which is the extreme boundary both of the district of the tribe *Chee-ling-tcha-poo*, and of the country of the *(Ke-eur-ke)* Kalkas. Our route was here surrounded by mountains. On one side was the river Orhon *(Go-eur-when)*, which, rising in the south-east, runs westward until it discharges itself into the Selingue. The Selingue rises in the south-west, and after winding considerably among the mountains to the northward, turns to the north-east, and passes into the Russian province of Selinginsky *(Tsu-ku Pe-hing)*. Its course from thence is still northerly, until it finally discharges itself into the *Pe-hay-eur Hoo* (Baykal Lake). The country immediately about *Po-la* is wet and marshy, and several small pools or lakes are formed from the excess of the waters. The herbage and brush-wood is also here abundant, and on the south-east side there are dark and extensive forests. The muskitoes we found here very numerous, and they seemed by their humming noise to lead the way as we proceeded.

After another day's journey we arrived at *Su-*

*pu-ke-htu,** the pass fixed for the boundary between the two empires. Here again we found the aspect of the country mountainous on both sides of our route. We perceived small streams running in the intervening vallies; and on the north side of our route we met with a spring of very cool and sweet water. The vegetation in all the low grounds was abundant. Here we were again molested by the muskitoes in great numbers. We had no time to drive them away, and our attendants were so much bitten in the face by these insects as to occasion inflammation and swelling.

Two days after this, being the 23d of the moon, we reached the first Russian station. It is under the government of Selinginsky, and is established on the south bank of the Selingue.

Here we were met by a messenger from *Yee-fan Sa-fi-tchee*, the Russian governor of Selinginsky; who, accosting us, enquired who we were, and whither we were going? To this we

* Apparently the *Zurukaitu* of Coxe, p. 448, and the *Saratzyn* of Bell, vol. i. p. 374. At least it is under these names that the boundary station between the two empires is described by those writers. The frontier stations of Kiachta and Maimaitchin, which, as observed by Coxe, have since "become the centre of Russian and Chinese commerce," did not exist at this period, but were subsequently established in pursuance of a treaty, called the Treaty of Kiachta, in 1728.

answered;" we are the imperial ambassadors and heavenly messengers of his most excellent Majesty the Emperor of China;* we are going to the residence of *A-yu-kee*, the Khan of the kingdom of the Tourgouths, in order to make known to him an imperial edict, and to deliver to him

* All inflated or extravagant expressions, whenever they have occurred, have been translated as literally as possible, and when a literal version was impracticable, the phrase which appeared most analogous in our language has been employed. What is commonly considered the oriental style is not however much observable in the generality of Chinese compositions, and seldom, if at all, appears in this narrative, except when the object is to display their political pretensions, on which occasions such expressions are not mere words of course, but actual assertions of a right, the acknowledgement and enforcement of which they appear never to have neglected whenever prudence or policy would permit. The Chinese term here translated "emperor" and "imperial," is perhaps more strictly analogous to that of "king of kings," formerly assumed by another Asiatic power. The title of "heavenly messenger" seems to be assumed by these Ambassadors, as being (according to their phraseology,) sent from the "heavenly" empire by the son of "heaven." The Chinese word "shing," which is here translated "most excellent," is also one of very high import, so that it is usually rendered "Saint," or "holy," in the writings of the missionaries. There can be no doubt but that the Chinese government continues even to this day to derive some strength and advantage from these lofty pretensions, and that with them, the empire of opinion goes a great way, both in this and in other respects, to supply the place of that of the sword.

certain presents and other testimonies of the imperial favour. But as the occasion of our coming hither is well known to your commercial agent, the merchant *Ha-mi-sa-eur*, your master need only enquire from him, and he will then be fully informed."

Upon receiving this answer, *Yee-fan Sa-fi-tchee* immediately sent us a guard of officers and soldiers, together with a sufficient number of boats for our conveyance to the town of Selinginsky. Upon our nearer approach we were met by other troops of soldiers, drawn out in line, in honour of our imperial commission; and these troops afterwards escorted us to the house appointed by the local government for our accommodation. Here we were visited by *Yee-fan Sa-fi-tche;* and he then repeated his enquiries, saying, "What is the nature of the business which has brought hither the heavenly messengers; are the affairs of my nation in any way concerned in it?" We thus replied:

"The special purpose upon which we have been despatched to this country is that of proceeding upon a mission to the residence of *A-yukee*, the Khan of the Tourgouth Tartars. The service therefore upon which we are employed by the imperial authority does not particularly concern your nation; but as the messengers of the Khan *A-yu-kee*, whom he sent with presents

and respectful enquiries after the health of our most excellent Emperor, came upon that occasion through the Russian territories, and were specially conducted by the officers of your country to our empire of China, our Emperor has likewise been pleased to despatch us, in the present instance, by the same route. His Majesty was at first, indeed, doubtful, whether horses and suitable accommodation for travelling could be furnished us upon the route which lies through your country, and whether our coming might not put you to inconvenience; he therefore issued his imperial commands to his ministers to consult on this subject with your merchant *Ha-mi-sa-eur*. *Ha-mi-sa-eur* declared, in reply, that there would assuredly be no want either of horses or of any other requisite accommodation; and we have been sent forward hither accordingly."

Yee-fan Sa-fi-tche then said, "the people of my nation go every year to the empire of China to trade, and have many times been treated with distinguished favour by your most excellent Emperor. As you are his Majesty's heavenly messengers, and have now arrived here, on your journey, how can there possibly be any delay or neglect on our part in supplying you with horses, and whatever else you may require! A

despatch has therefore already been sent off to the *Cha-han-Khân* of this empire, to acquaint him with your arrival, as well as with the occasion of your intended journey; but an answer has not yet been received. In the meanwhile, not having any express orders on the subject from the Khan, I cannot venture to permit the heavenly messengers to advance beyond this place, and must therefore request you to make here a temporary stay while we await the Khan's orders; but as soon as they arrive, you will be able to proceed without further delay on your journey."

For this reason we had to stop at Selinginsky; and we waited there for the arrival of the answer from the *Cha-han-Khan* for five months and three days.* During this interval *Yee-fan Sa-ji-tche*

* This delay, and the other difficulties which occurred in the course of a circuitous and laborious journey through the Russian dominions, appears to have prolonged the period of the mission considerably beyond the original calculation; but the Chinese ambassador readily acknowledges throughout this narrative that these difficulties and delays were nowise imputable to the Russians, from whom he received, he observes, the most honourable treatment, and every aid and assistance in their power; and notwithstanding what may be considered the somewhat suspicious and equivocal object of their mission.

The complaint, therefore, which the late Emperor Kien-long, in his edict on the return of the Tourgouths in 1771, insinuates

was extremely respectful and attentive, sometimes inviting us to entertainments, and at other times sending us presents of eatables. We gave him in return four pieces of silk.

On the 52d year of *Kang-hy* the merchants *Ha-mi-sa-eur* and *Go-fo-nas-se Ye-fi-tchee* arrived at Selinginsky on their way to Pekin, and paid a visit to me and my three colleagues at our common residence. Each of these merchants presented us with 30 fox skins, beside fruit and similar articles.

Upon this we said, " through the favour and kindness of his Imperial Majesty every thing we can use or require upon our present journey

against the Russians, in the following allusion to this transaction, seems wholly groundless; it is here quoted, indeed, only because it further illustrates what may be considered the *secret* history of the mission.

" *Ching-tsou-jin-hoang-ty* (*Kanghy*) mon ayeul, *voulant être instruit des véritables raisons qui avoient porté Ayouki à se dépayser ainsi*, lui envoya le Mandarin *Toulichen*, et quelque autres, pour l'assurer de sa protection, en cas qu'il voulût revenir dans les lieux qu'il habitoit ci-devant. Les Russes, auxquels *Toulichen* avoit ordre de s'addresser pour demander la permission de traverser leur royaume, obtint sans peine de le parcourir; *mais les Russes ne lui ayant donné aucun eclaircissement sur ce qu'il cherchoit*, il fût trois années et quelques mois à remplir l'objet de sa commission. Ce ne fut qu'après son retour qu'on fut enfin instruit de ce qui regardoit Ayouki et les siens."— *Memoires sur les Chinois*, vol. i. p. 407.

is already provided for us, nothing is deficient; why then should you, who are travellers like ourselves, be at the trouble and inconvenience of making us these presents? we beg, therefore, with many thanks, to return them to you." *Ha-mi-sa-eur*, however, again sent his messengers to us to press our acceptance of the presents; and through these messengers, they further observed, "We are in the habit of regularly visiting the Chinese empire to trade, and we have repeatedly experienced, for these many years past, the great kindness of your most excellent Emperor: but this is the first time that any heavenly messengers have visited our country. Since we are now so fortunate as to meet with you at this place, there is hardly any thing we can do which is sufficient to express to you our respect and regard. Again and again, therefore, we most earnestly request that you will accept what we have offered." To this we replied, "Since *Ha-mi-sa-eur* has thus spoken, we will accept of the eatables he has sent us, and only send back to him the fox-skins; but you must at the same time inform *Ha-mi-sa-eur* that our Chinese imperial government has never allowed the officers, or any other persons who may at any time be employed in executing the Emperor's commands, to accept of presents, even of the smallest value.

At a future day, however, we shall have many opportunities of meeting *Ha-mi-sa-eur*, and it will then be quite time enough for us to testify the reciprocal sentiments which we entertain for each other. But just now it is absolutely impossible for us to accept of any presents of value, and we must therefore return the fox skins; the dishes of fruit we have agreed to retain, in order to show our sense of his civilities."

On the 14th day of the 1st moon of the 52d year of *Kang-hee* (1713), the expected despatches arrived from the *Cha-han-Khan;* and upon this occasion *Fee-to-eur Yee-fan-na-tchee*, the governor of the city of *(Ge-eur-koo)* Irkutsky, sent his officer *Wen-to-lee Go-fan-a-fi-tchee* to visit us.

Upon our enquiring from this officer what intelligence he had to communicate, he said,

"The governor of Irkutsky has just received a despatch from *Ko-ko-lin* (Kneaz Gagarin, Bell, vol. i. 222.*) the governor-general of *(To-po-eur)* Tobolsky.

* There can be no doubt that "Kokolin," whose name frequently occurs in these pages, is the Governor-General Kneaz Gagarin, whom Bell, about seven years after, speaks of as the preceding governor of Siberia, who, having incurred his Majesty's displeasure, had been recalled.

Voltaire, in his "Histoire de l'Empire de Russie sous Pierre

"The governor, my master, has in consequence sent me hither with orders to wait upon the heavenly messengers of the most excellent Emperor, and in all things to be very diligent and respectful in my attendance upon them; but in regard to the government despatches, not having myself seen them, I cannot say what they may contain."

Upon the arrival of this officer at Selinginsky *Yee-fan-na-fi-tchee*, the governor, immediately ordered 70 wheel carriages to be supplied us for our future accommodation on our journey. A military escort was also appointed for us. On the day of our departure, the troops of the station were drawn out in array, in compliment to our imperial commission, and we were conducted out of the town with drums beating, cannon firing, and a general display of the national flags and standards. Thus on the 16th of the 1st moon we finally quitted Selinginsky.

le Grand," speaking of the trade with China, observes, that "Le Prince *Gagarin*, gouverneur de la Sibérie, fut vingt ans à la tête de ce commerce." He adds, that "les vexations du Prince *Gagarin* nuisirent beaucoup au commerce qui l'avoit enrichi; mais, enfin elles le perdirent lui-même: il fut accusé devant la chambre de justice établie par le Czar, et on lui trancha la tête une année après que le Czarovitz fut condamné, et que la plupart de ceux qui avoient eu des liaisons avec ce prince furent exécutés à mort."—p. 404, Paris edition of 1785.

SELINGINSKY.

THIS district of the Russian empire is situated upon the frontiers of our empire of China, and is immediately adjoining to the district of *Pola*, of the division *Che-ling-tcha-poo*, of the country of the Kalkas. It is above two hundred *lee* in extent; the country is hilly throughout, but there are no very high mountains. Our route lay partly through wood-lands, and partly through marshes. In these woods the only trees we noticed were the *san*, the *sung*, and the *wha*, (firs, larches, and poplars). The river Selingue is unequal in breadth, but generally from 40 to 50 *tchang*.* The stream is rapid and clear; its course from S. W. to N. E. The river *Tsu-koo* (Strealka) flows from the S. E., and falls into it about 10 lee above the town of Selinginsky. The banks are thickly wooded with the *lieu* (willow), the *yng yo* and the *yu* (elm). At the junction of the Selingue and the Strealka there are 10 or more store houses appropriated for the reception and deposit of the Russian merchandizes. There are also upon the same spot a few habitations built of large timber, and raised to

* The *tchang* is a measure of 10 *che*, or cubits, of about 14 inches each.

the height of two stories. There were 20 or 30 vessels lying at this time in the river: they were built high in the stem, and low in the stern, above a *tchang* in breadth, and generally from 7 to 8 *tchang* in length.

On the east bank of the Selingue, and 10 lee north of the junction of the two rivers, is the town of Selinginsky.* It contains an hundred or more habitations, of the height of two stories, and built of large timber. The town is not enclosed with a wall or fortification, but is surrounded by mountains. It contains a mixed population of between two and three hundred Russian and Mongal families, who live together without distinction. There are also in the town

* "Selinginsky is situated on the east bank of the noble river Selinga, in a deep, barren, sandy soil, that produces almost nothing. The choice of this situation was extremely injudicious; for had the founders gone but half a mile further down, to the place where now the inhabitants have their gardens, they would have had a situation in every respect preferable to the present. This place consists of about 200 houses, and two churches, which are all of them built of wood. It is defended by a fortification of strong pallisades, on which are mounted some cannon."—*Bell*, vol. i. p. 334.

The Chinese historian seems to have overlooked the fortification of pallisades; or it might possibly have been erected in the interval of about seven years between the visits of the two embassies.

three Christian churches. The boats and small craft in the river amount to some hundreds. There is one resident officer who has the direction of the government, and he has 200 soldiers under his command.

The articles of furniture, and the like, in use here, are couches, tables, benches, carriages and litters.

The domesticated animals are camels, horses, oxen, sheep, dogs, poultry, and cats.

The cultivated produce of the earth is wheat, barley, *kao-me*, *yeu-me* (the two last are species of grain, probably the holcus sorghum & a panicum), two sorts of turnep, the *mant-sing*, white lettuces, leeks and onions.

The animals found in a wild state in the mountains are the bear, the wolf, the wild boar, the deer, the *pao*, the *whey shu*, the yellow goat, the fox, and the white rabbit.

The following kinds of fish are found in the rivers: the *whee*, the *chu-lu*, the *ho-tu-la*, the *ta-ku*, the *lee*, the *she-pan*, the *mo-shu-eur-hoo*, the *tsee*, the *sun-go-ta*, the *shen*, the *keu-shin*, and the *ya-lu*.

There is also another species of fish found here which the Russians call *omolee*, about the size of the *ya-lu*, and above a *che* in length,

In the autumn, five days after the white frost sets in, this fish comes up the river from the Baykal lake, against the course of the stream, in great numbers. From this period the Russians here are all busily employed in catching the fish with their nets, and in afterwards salting them for winter use. The *chu-loo* is another species, which feeds upon the *omolee*, and therefore always follows it up the river. About the middle of the 10th moon the Selingue begins to be frozen.*

* The above account of this fishery agrees precisely with that given by Bell, who adds, however, some further particulars. He observes, that "the Baykall is abundantly furnished with various kinds of excellent fish, particularly sturgeon, and a fish called *omully*, in shape and taste resembling a herring, but broader and larger."

"The omully, which I formerly described, come in vast shoals from the Baykall, in autumn, up this river (the Selingue) to spawn; after which they return to the sea so weak that many of them are carried down floating on the surface of the stream. During the progress of the omully up the river, the inhabitants of the adjacent villages assemble with their nets, and catch as many of them as they please. On this occasion the poor take what they can use, and the rest are left upon the banks. These fishes advance up the river about 10 miles a day. On their first appearance, the report is soon spread over the country, and, in two or three hours, the people catch as many as they need either for present use or winter provisions. This fish is very

agreeable food either fresh or salted. It is observed, they are much better and fatter the nearer they are caught to the sea; a plain argument, that, were they caught in the sea, they would still be preferable to any caught in the river. I have often thought, what inestimable treasure these *omully* would produce in other parts of the world: whereas here, the consumption being small, they are little valued. It is remarkable, that the *omully* are not to be found at any season in the Angara, or other rivers to the north of the Baykal."—vol. i. p. 319 and 359.

CHAPTER III.

Journey to and Description of Udinsky—Passage across and general Description of the Baykal Lake—Arrival at Irkutsky, and Conference with the Governor—Conference with an Officer sent to meet the Envoy from Tobolsky—Departure from Irkutsky under a Military Salute, and Embarkation upon the River Angara—Some Account of the Town and District of Irkutsky.

On the 18th of the moon, the 2d day after we had quitted Selinginsky, we reached *Uti-Pe-hing* (Udinsky, Bell, i. 326.) The governor or commandant received us with colours flying and all his soldiers drawn out in line. He afterwards prepared an entertainment for us, and was extremely obliging and attentive in his general behaviour. His wife and children presented us with wine, and also danced before us, and played upon the musical instruments of their country for our amusement.

UDINSKY.

This government is distant something more than 200 lee to the N. E. of Selinginsky. The

country is thickly wooded and extremely mountainous. Upon the banks however of the Selingue there are level spaces which are cultivated. The Selingue here takes its course from the S. W. to the N. W. The *Utee* (Uda of Bell) rises in the S. E., and after taking a circuit to the westward, falls into the Selingue. The town is without walls, but is on all sides surrounded with mountains. Its population consists of about 250 Russian and Mongal families living together without distinction. The garrison consists of a commandant and 200 soldiers. There are here two churches of the Christians; the style of the buildings, and the natural and artificial productions, are the same as at Selinginsky.

There is in this country a sort of stone, about the size of the palm of the hand, which wholly consists of laminæ, or flakes lying over each other. It having been found that these flakes are very thin and transparent, the people of this country separate them from each other, and use them instead of glass or crystal. The casements in the windows of all the Russian houses are fitted with this material.

Upon our making enquiry from whence it came, we were informed that there is a river called *Fee-tee-mo* (Vitim), which rises in one of the recesses of the mountains *Ken-te-han*,

and after running to the eastward of the town of *Pa-eur-ku-simo* (Bargouzin) and taking a circuit round the sources of the *Gang-ko-la* (Upper Angara) finally falls into the *Chu-eur-ke* (the Lena). It is in the mountains at and about the source of the Vitim that these laminated stones are found, and they are now in general use at (*Mo-se-ko-va*) Moscow, Tobolsky, and other places.

On the 21st day of the moon, the third after leaving Udinsky, we arrived at *Po-so-eur-yee-se-ko* (Posolsky) on the south bank of the (*Pe-kay-eur-hoo*) Baykal Lake. The country through which we passed still continued extremely mountainous, and covered with wood, but the ground immediately on the road side was cultivated. Here are two small villages called *Tse-yang-hay* and *O-la-ku-eur;* the houses are not closely built, and are inhabited entirely by Russians. The Baykal Lake is surrounded by mountains; its banks are overgrown with reeds; and upon its surface thick fogs and noxious vapours collect from the vast forests and deserts in the vicinity. It is a great expanse of waters, extending further than the eye can reach, and its waves are like those of the ocean.

BAYKAL LAKE.

From Udinsky to the landing place on the opposite bank of the lake, the course is N. W. and the distance above 300 lee. Vast mountains and forests appear on all sides, but some cultivated fields are seen along the banks of the lake, and 6 or 7 small villages. The breadth of the lake from north to south is unequal, but generally exceeds an hundred lee. Its length from east to west is above a thousand lee. Mountains encompass the lake entirely. The river Selingue falls into it from the S. W. the *Pa-eur-ku-simo* from the S. E., and the *Gang-ko-la* (Upper Angara) from the N. E. Towards the north-eastern end of the lake is an island called *O-leao-han* (Olchon), about 50 lee in breadth and 200 or more in length. On this island there are hills covered with the *san*, the *sung* (firs and larches) and the *yu*, and osiers in abundance. Here also are found all kinds of game and wild animals. This island is frequented by 50 or more of the families of the wandering tribes of the Mongals and the *Pu-la-te* (Buraty of Bell*), and they bring hither with them their horses, sheep, and

* The following is extracted from an account of this tribe given by Mr. Bell. "Here we found another tribe of the

oxen. In this lake are found seals and all kinds of fish. In the latter end of the 12th moon the ice on the Baykal becomes sufficiently solid for the people of the country to travel over it. Towards the end of the 3d moon it begins to break up.

The lake discharges its waters at the north-western extremity by the river *Gang-ko-la* (Angara). This river takes from thence a northerly direction. The country about the Angara is generally woody and mountainous; but its im-

natives of Siberia, who differ in some particulars from all those I have formerly described. They are called by the Russians *Brutsky*, but by themselves *Buraty*. They live in tents all the year; and, having large flocks of sheep and many cows and horses, they remove from place to place, as the convenience of grazing requires. Their language has a great affinity to that of the Calmucs; and they have priests among them who can read and write that language. As to their dress and manner of life, I could observe little difference between them and the Calmucs on the Volga, and therefore conclude they are both descended from the same original. Their faces, however, are not quite so flat as those of the Calmucs, their noses being somewhat higher, and their countenance more open. These people were formerly subject to a prince of the Mongals, but now live very quietly under the Russian government. They are at present a very numerous people, reaching towards the east and south of the Baykal Lake, and are generally reckoned very honest and sincere."—*Bell*, vol. i. p. 299—301.

mediate course after the first 50 lee is through a wide and extensive valley.*

On the 22d we reached *Ko-lo-u-sena* (St. Nicholas), on the north bank of the Baykal; and on the third day's journey from thence, or the 25th of the moon, we arrived at the town of *Ge-ur-koo* (Irkutsky). The governor of the town received us with colours flying, drums beating

* Mr. Bell observes, that "the Baykal sea, opposite to the mouth of the Selinga, is reckoned about 50 English miles broad, though it is much broader in some other places, and about 300 miles in length. It is wholly fresh water, and is supplied by the Selinga, and many other rivers from the south, and by the higher Angara from the east. The course of this sea is from the south-west to north-east, and has very few shelves or rocks. There is only one large island, near the middle of it, called Olchon. It is bounded on the north by a ridge of high rocks, which run from one end of it to the other. The only opening by which it discharges itself is that into the Angara, which, though it is a natural passage, appears as if cut through the rocks by art. In my opinion, one cannot imagine a more beautiful prospect in nature than is seen from the top of these mountains, which may easily be perceived from the short and imperfect sketch I have drawn of it. The woods on the summit of the rocks are short, and thinly scattered; but, on their declivity towards the north, and in the valleys, the trees become gradually both taller and larger. There is abundance of game in these woods, particularly the wild boar, which was the first of that species found in this country; a certain sign of a temperate climate, for these animals cannot endure the excessive cold in more northerly parts."—vol. i. p. 318.

and muskets firing; and then conducted us to one of the houses belonging to the government, which he had expressly fitted up for our accommodation and residence.

It was our desire to proceed immediately upon our journey, but *Fee-to-eur Yee-fan-na-tchee*, the Governor, said, " my instructions from my superior, the Governor-General *Ko-ko-lin* (Gagarin) simply direct me to receive and accommodate the heavenly messengers in this city: these being his precise words, I cannot deviate from them in any degree; but as soon as the officer, who is expected here from Tobolsky to meet you, arrives, you will be enabled to continue your route."

We accordingly awaited at Irkutsky this officer's arrival. In the interval *Fee-to-eur Yee-fan-na-tchee* prepared entertainments, to which he invited us, and also sent us bullocks and pigs, in addition to the government allowances, as presents from himself. These presents we declined, saying, " the *Cha-han-Khan* of your nation supplies us with every thing we want very liberally and abundantly, more even than we can consume; why then, Governor, should you think of making us further presents from yourself?"

Fee-to-eur Yee-fan-na-tchee replied, " Since the conclusion of the treaty of peace and amity

between our two empires, my countrymen have received many and great favours from your most excellent Emperor; but until this present time none of the heavenly messengers ever came to this country. This spot which you have now condescended to visit possesses nothing of value to present you with; these trifles are merely offered as a testimony of the respect and esteem, which, conformably to the sentiments and wishes of the *Cha-han-Khan*, my master, I feel for the heavenly messengers of the Emperor. I therefore earnestly beg you to retain them."

As he a third time urged his request, we finally accepted of his presents, and gave him two pieces of silk in return. He also frequently invited us to go out hunting with him. Every day, when the weather was fine, excursions were made beyond the walls of the city for hunting or fishing, in order that the period of our detention might pass away pleasantly.

On the 22d of the 2d moon *Po-eur-koni Tse-pan-na-fi-tchee*, the officer who had been despatched by the Governor-General *Ko-ko-lin* to meet us from Tobolsky, arrived at Irkutsky. We immediately proposed to set out upon our journey without further delay; but this officer said, "the ice on the river not being yet broken up, the boats cannot move; and as for the route by

land, it is rough and dangerous, and the country being absolutely without inhabitants, it would scarcely be possible to procure for you either horses or other necessary accommodation. You therefore must not think of moving at present."

We replied, " as we are engaged in the execution of an imperial commission, we care not for labour or fatigue; especially as with us in China celerity and dispatch are esteemed essential parts of the duty of all persons employed upon the public service; already we have been detained above five months at Selinginsky; here again we have been for a long time awaiting your arrival. If the necessary supplies cannot be procured for us upon the road, we can, instead thereof, take with us from hence a store of dry provisions; and if horses cannot always be had, we can even proceed for a few days on foot. The plan of thus stopping from time to time upon the route, is, according to our Chinese laws and customs, extremely improper and objectionable."

Po-eur-ko-ni then said, " my superior, the Governor-General *Ko-ko-lin*, has given me express orders to conduct your Excellencies by water; he has at the same time directed me to be extremely respectful and attentive, and to be careful not to be remiss or deficient in any thing.

These being his orders, how can I presume to deviate from them? Upon the slightest deviation my head would be in jeopardy."

We continued therefore at Irkutsky till the ice was broken up and the River Angara navigable.

One day *Po-eur-ko-ni* called upon us and said, " the countries under the dominion of the most excellent Emperor of China are rich and flourishing, and of a vast extent. The tribes and kingdoms upon which they border are numerous. The dominions of Russia, on the contrary, are mere deserts, and border upon two kingdoms only. How, then, does it happen that your empire is engaged in no hostilities, and enjoys such perfect tranquillity, while in my country, on the contrary, wars and hostilities are waged without ceasing?"*

* The reader may naturally feel some impatience at the vain boasting and courtly style which the Chinese historian falls into on every occasion, in which his sovereign or his country are in any way directly or indirectly concerned. It may be material, however, here again to observe, that these are not mere words of course, the invention of the writer on the spur of the occasion, but (as it appears to the translator) advisedly introduced; and that, taken altogether, they in fact constitute a kind of official declaration of the theory of the Chinese monarchy, a theory which it has maintained from very remote times, has always professed to reduce into practice, and will probably adhere to up

We thus informed him in our reply; "the effects of the most excellent virtues of our Emperor are diffused far and wide. He loves his people like his children. For all who breathe the air and have blood in their veins, his superintending care ensures unfailing means of procuring subsistence: whether near or remote, whether within or without (the ancient boundaries,) he regards all with the eyes of equal charity and benevolence: like heaven, he dispenses favours and protection to all which has life. He inflicts no severe punishments, and is ever unwilling to kill.* Broken successions he

to the last moment of its political existence. What proportion of truth is intermingled with the falsehood of these arrogant pretensions of the Chinese is a question not hastily or easily to be decided; though it may be hoped that the documents translated in this volume will contribute something to illustrate it.

* It must in fairness be admitted that the Chinese penal code is not a sanguinary one; in fact it is much less so than appears upon mere cursory or superficial observation, the maximum only of punishment being usually stated under each case, and the several grounds of mitigation and exemption either subjoined in some clause, or left to be ascertained by reference to general tables. In point of fact, the translator believes that, with the exception of what may be termed political offences, capital and other severe punishments are by no means frequent. It may be added, that the Emperor *Kam-hi* (*Cang-hy*), whose praises are here and in other places resounded by his ambassador, was con-

restores; fallen nations he re-establishes. The fame of these excellent qualities having reached beyond the seas, and all nations being in the enjoyment of our most excellent Emperor's favour, they look up to him with admiration and gratitude, and with willing and cheerful hearts submit themselves to him. Thus it is that we have no wars or hostilities from without, and that we have for so long a time enjoyed uninterruptedly the blessings of peace and tranquillity at home.

Po-eur-koni then remarked, "our Russian habits and customs are indeed very different from yours. Ambitious of conquest, and occupied in vain pursuits, we are always in arms; to this day we continue as before, fighting and contending without intermission."

The ice on the river Angara began to break on the 25th of the third moon; upon which we again urged in a pressing manner our speedy departure; but *Fee-to-eur Yee-fan-na-tchee* and *Po-eur-ko-ni Tse-fan-na-fi-tchee* both said, "the course from

fessedly, by the united voice of his European (the missionaries) and his Chinese and Tartar subjects, the most amiable and enlightened prince who had ever sat on the throne of China, at least in modern times; and it may therefore fairly be presumed that the conduct of the magistrates in the practical execution of the laws during his reign may have been in some degree influenced by his character and example.

hence to Tobolsky is north-westerly; and although the ice is partly dissolved here, it is not yet broken up farther to the northward; so that it is impossible as yet to proceed. This being our native country, we are perfectly well acquainted with the proper times and seasons for travelling through it. Is it possible that we should presume to delay you unnecessarily!"

On the 15th of the 4th moon they began to repair and make ready their vessels, and by the end of the moon the four vessels which were allotted to us were completely equipped for the voyage.

On the 4th of the 5th moon we were saluted with drums, trumpets, musketry and cannon; and having embarked on board our vessels under an escort of troops with colours flying, we finally quitted Irkutsky.

IRKUTSKY.

This city lies to the north-west of the Baykal Lake, distant about 150 lee. Neither the route to Irkutsky nor the country about it was very mountainous; generally, plains or ridges of hills moderately elevated. The river Angara runs from the south-east, and after winding to the westward of Irkutsky resumes its course to the

north-west. The river *Ge-eur-ku* (River Irkut of Bell) rises in the south-west, and falls at this place into the Angara. The town of Irkutsky is without walls; it appears to contain a population of above 800 families: the houses have all upper stories, and are built of large timber. The inhabitants are chiefly Russians, the Mongals being very few in number. There are here five Christian churches, with a public market. This town, and all the neighbouring stations, are subject to the authority of *Yee-se-to-eur-ni Yee-fan-na-tchee* the governor, and who has also under his command a garrison of 500 men.*

* Mr. Bell observes of Irkutsky, that "it stands on the north bank of the Angara, in a large plain, to the north of which the grounds are very high, and covered with woods. On the south side of the river, towards the Baykal Lake, are high hills rising to the south, and covered with tall trees, among which are many larixes and Siberian cedars [probably the *san* and *sung* of the text]. The town of Irkutsky is fortified with a ditch and strong pallisades, having towers at certain distances. The garrison consists of some regular troops, besides a number of cossacks, or the militia of the country. The town contains about 2000 houses; and the inhabitants are plentifully supplied with provisions of all kinds from the neighbouring villages." "At Irkutsky is a good market for furs of all sorts, and likewise for many kinds of China goods. All merchandise must be entered at the custom-house in this place, and pays a duty of 10 per cent. which produces a considerable revenue to his Majesty."—vol. i. p. 305—308.

The works of art in use here are coaches, tables, chairs, benches, carriages, litters, ships, boats, barges, water-mills.

Their musical instruments are bells, drums, flutes, *siao-na*, and different kinds of guitars with metal wires.

The chief productions are fine hempen cloths and dried bullocks hides.

The cultivated produce of the ground consists of wheat, barley, *kao-me* (holcus Sorghum), *yeu-me* (panicum), turneps, *mant-sing*, white lettuce, leeks, and onions.

The domesticated animals are horses, oxen, sheep, pigs, fowls, ducks, dogs and cats.

The water in use is drawn from square wells enclosed in frames of wood.

In the river are found all kinds of fish.

At the end of the third moon, the snow lying on the ground begins to disappear, and the ice upon the Angara begins to break at the same time. Early in the fourth moon the ice in the Baykal is also broken. At about the same season of the year the trees begin to bud and the grass to spring forth.

CHAPTER IV.

Description of the River Angara—Arrival at Yeneseik—Reception and Military Honors—Conference with the Governor—some Account of Yeneseik and Journey thence to Makofsky—Interview with a Russian Officer with certain European Captives under his charge—Embarkation on the Ket, and some Account of that River.

HAVING embarked on the Angara at Irkutsky, we continued our route down the stream of that river, and in the course of the voyage had to go through several dangerous and difficult passes, called *Po-lo-ke* and *Si-fi-la*. There were some appearances on the banks of the Angara extremely remarkable—perpendicular cliffs rising from the edge of the stream to the height of a thousand cubits, and consisting of strata of rocks lying over each other, and frequently hollowed out into caverns beneath. The roaring of the waters as they dashed against these rocks was incessant, and when agitated by high winds they rose into great waves, striking and rebounding again with the swiftness of an arrow.

RIVER ANGARA.

THE River Angara issues, as already stated, from the Baykal Lake, and, after winding round the town of Irkutsky, continues its north-westerly course until it joins the (*Yee-nisee*) Enisee, and these united streams ultimately discharge themselves into the northern ocean. The Angara is about the same size as the Selinga, and runs generally in a clear and rapid stream. The country through which it flows is universally mountainous, sometimes consisting of crags and precipices, at other times, of elevated plains with moderate declivities. The hills are nearly covered with forest trees, such as the *san*, the *sung*, the *mawee-sung*, the *yang-wha*, (firs, larches, and poplars), the *yng-gao* and the *la-moey*. The low ground near the banks is generally overgrown with willows. After proceeding about 1000 *lee*, we found the water of the Angara becoming gradually thick and muddy. The small river Irkut falls into it at Irkutsky; 1900 *lees* further on, is the junction of the Angara with the *E-lee-mo* (R. Elimm), a river which descends from the north-eastward. The portion of the stream which lies between this spot and the junction with the Enisee, the Russians describe by a new name, calling it the river *Tungkuseko* (R. Tongusta).

There are, beside the Irkut and the Elimm, already mentioned, ten or more smaller streams, which likewise fall into the Angara. In the course of this navigation there are five places to be passed through, called *Pe-ke*, eight called *Po-lo-ke*, and nine called *Si-fi-la*.

When the banks are rocky and over-hanging, and there are high rocks also in the midst of the stream, the Russians call such a pass, *Pe-ke:* when the banks are rocky and perpendicular on both sides, and there are large stones in the midst, over which the river makes a rapid descent, the Russians give the pass the name of *Po-lo-ke:* when, lastly, the stream is very shallow, and contracted by the number of rocks among which it rushes with great rapidity, the Russians call the pass *Si-fi-la*.

On the 4th of the 5th moon, the date of our departure from Irkutsky, the ice and snow still lay undissolved on the banks of the river. It was generally 2 to 3 *che* in depth, and in some places 10 *che* or more.

Proceeding with the current of the stream, and continuing our course by night as well as by day, we reached in the space of 19 days the town of *Yee-nie-see* (*Yeniseik*), and thus performed within this period a voyage of upwards of 3000 *lee*. In this tract of country through

which we passed, all the intervals of level ground on the banks of the river, and also the plains among the hills, appeared cultivated. There were also seen upon this route a few straggling villages of Russians, Buraty and Solim.*

The following are the names of the five *Peke*. 1. *Mietipisi*. 2. *Pataeur-manseke*. 3. *Totaeurseke*. 4. *Miefiseke*. 5. *Fitamoke*.

The eight *Poloke* were thus named. 1. *Pohomi-eurna*. 2. *Piani*. 3. *Patun*.† 4. *Toeurqui*. 5. *Shamanseke*. 6. *Opulinseke*. 7. *Mooeursuke*. 8. *Setililoshe*.

The nine *Sifila* had the following names. 1. *Gopiao Mososenai*. 2. *Loshe*. 3. *Peko*.

* The Solim are supposed to be the aborigines of Siberia, and are described by Bell under the name of Tongusians.—vol. i. p. 272.

† Bell, vol. ii. p. 170, observes "Next day we came to a great cataract, called *Padun* from the steepness of its fall." . . . "In passing these cataracts, the pilot sits upon the bow of the vessel, and makes signs with his cap to the people at the helm which way to steer; for the waters, dashing against the rocks and great stones, make such a hideous noise, that not a single articulate sound can be heard. The oars, besides, must be plied very hard in order to prevent the vessel from running to either side; for, if once she touches the rocks, all the goods must infallibly be lost, and perhaps the men's lives, of which disasters there are many examples."

4. *Tunlohooa.* 5. *Kuofiyenscke.* 6. *Koshena.* 7. *Gofihana.* 8. *Goeurkena.* 9. *Kuosaya.*

On the 23d of the 5th moon, after a voyage of nineteen days, as already stated, we arrived and disembarked at the town of Yeniseik. The governor, *Ge-lee-ke San-ta Ur-se-min-na-tchee,* drew out his troops upon the occasion of our arrival, and also saluted us with drums, trumpets, musketry, and cannon.

Having to proceed from hence for the next three days journey by land, we were previously detained here five days, while the horses and travelling equipage were getting ready.

The governor having waited on us upon our arrival, he immediately invited us to a feast, and soon after sent a present to each of us of two martin skins, ten white fox skins, some pigs, and some wine. Upon our having refused every thing he had sent, the governor said to us: "From the most ancient times to the present, none of the natives of China ever before visited my country; now, happily, the Most Excellent Emperor of China has appointed your Excellencies to be his heavenly messengers, and has sent you hither. I do not know how to testify to you sufficiently upon such an occasion my respect and regard. Having no valuable things to offer you, I have merely sent you some trifles,

as testimonies of my sentiments of the most sincere and profound consideration for you; pray therefore deign to accept of them."

We replied: "Through the favour and munificence of our Most Excellent Emperor, we are amply supplied with every thing we ordinarily want; and as for what we need on our present journey, the supplies given us by the *Chahan Khan* are deficient in nothing. Nevertheless we would readily, governor, accept what you have offered us; but the officers of the Chinese empire, when employed on service by their sovereign, dare not accept of the smallest present." The governor having still continued to press our acceptance of the articles, we agreed to retain the pigs and the wine, sending back the martin skins and fox skins, with the addition of a present from ourselves of four pieces of silks.

On the 29th of the moon, our horses and travelling equipage being ready, we set out from Yeniseik, under an escort of troops with their colours flying, and we were at the same time saluted with drums, trumpets, musketry, and cannon.

YENISEIK.

The town of Yeniseik lies to the N.W. of

Irkutsky. The distance by water is above 3000 *lee*. By land it is one month's journey. The channel of the river is here very broad, but it is on all sides surrounded by mountains. The river Enisei runs from the south; it is a larger river than the Angara. The latter runs on a south-easterly direction, and, about 10 *lee* south of the town, falls into the former. The Enisei, after passing the town, runs north-eastward, and finally discharges itself into the Northern Ocean.

The town of Yeniseik is without walls. Its population is entirely Russian, and comprises above a thousand families. There are here eight Christian churches, and there is also a public market. The town and district are under the government of an officer whose name is *Yu-se-to-ur-ni Ge-li-ke San-ta-ur-se-min Na-tchee.** This officer has a garrison of 800 soldiers under his command.

* This officer was probably removed before the arrival of Mr. Bell, as the name of the commandant (Becklemishoff,) given in his work, bears no analogy to that given by the Chinese historian.

Bell observes, that "the town of Yeniseysky is pleasantly situated in a plain, on the western bank of the river Yenisei, from which the town takes its name; it is a large and populous place, fenced with a ditch, palisades, and wooden towers."

The style of building, the produce of the earth, and the domesticated animals, are all the same here as at Irkutsky.

The Sulim Tartars are called here by the Russians *Ko-mu-ni-han*, and sometimes *Tung-gu-se* (Tongusians.)

There is a species of deer here which is used both for riding and carrying burthens. It is called *go-lun;* its colour is white and brown; it has horns, and is about the size of an ass or mule.

In the woods is found the bird *ho-kee*, [probably a species of pheasant.]

In the very coldest parts of this northern country, a species of animal is found which burrows under the earth, and which dies if it is at all exposed at any time to the sun and air. It is of great size, and weighs ten thousand *kin.** Its bones are very white and shining, like ivory. It is not by nature a powerful animal, and is therefore not very dangerous or ferocious. It is found generally in the mud upon the banks of rivers. The Russians collect the bones of this animal, in order to make cups, saucers, combs, and other small articles. The flesh of the animal is of a very refrigerating qua-

* A *kin* is one third more than the English pound.

lity, and is eaten as a remedy in fevers. The foreign name of this animal is Ma-men-tou va.* We call it *Kee-shoo.*

From Yeniseik to the Northern Ocean is about a month's journey.

In this country, the nights immediately before and after Midsummer, are at no hour very dark. At the hour of greatest darkness, though the sun is down, there is still light enough to play at cards. An hour or two after this, the day dawns in the east, and the sun rises.

We waited two days at Yeniseik while preparations were making for the continuation of our journey. During this time, our travelling baggage was distributing upon different vehicles, and the requisite number of horses collecting to draw them. As soon as every thing was ready, we set out from the town under an escort of

* This account of the popular notions prevalent among the natives relative to the Siberian Mammoth, corresponds in most particulars with that given by Mr. Bell, vol. ii. p. 193.

Mr. Bell indeed qualifies this account, by adding that he gives it only as the report of the superstitious and ignorant; and he says nothing of the flesh having been actually eaten, and esteemed as a remedy in certain diseases. More recent discoveries, however, so far as they have gone, have tended to confirm the truth of these relations, and not only bones, but the flesh of this extraordinary animal has lately been found undecayed among the snows in these northern regions.

soldiers, who accompanied us across the hills of *Ma-ko-fo-se-ko*. We slept one night upon the road, and on the 2d day of the intercalary fifth moon, we arrived at the military station and small town of *Ma-ko-se-ko* (Makofsky,) situated on the banks of the river (Ket) *Ko-ti*.

The hills of *Ma-ko-fo-se-ko* lie about 20 *lee* N.W. of Yeniseik. The place where we disembarked in order to commence our land journey, is called *Vu-se-ke-mou*.

Our route lay through thick forests of the *ko-sung*, the *ma-wee-sung*, the *san*, the *yang-wha*, the *lieu*, the *la-moey*, and the *yng-gao*, (firs, larches, poplars, willows, &c.) We did not cross any very high mountains, and the ground was generally wet and swampy. We forded, (in the course of these two days,) four or five small streams, and passed three or four villages.

In these forests are found bears, wolves, *kan-ta-han* (elks), foxes, *yin-shoo*, and *whey-shoo*.

MAKOFSKY.

This station lies to the N.W. of Yeniseik, distant about 250 lee. The intervening country is mountainous. The river Ket, which passes near this station, rises in the S. E. and continues

its course afterwards towards the N.W. The village consists of forty or fifty houses, inhabited entirely by Russians, and there is also here one Christian church.

Upon the river there are twenty or thirty large barges of 7 *chang** in length by 1 *chang* in breadth, besides a great number of boats and small vessels. This is the place where all the travellers by water assemble and embark for Tobolsky.

Here we waited some time while they were procuring boats and taking in provisions for our voyage down the river. During this interval, *La-fa-lin-tè*, the governor of *E-le-mo* (Elimsky), asked leave to wait on us; and, on being admitted, he introduced to us *Ya-na-eur*, a captive European General, and others, whom he had under his charge. The captives appeared to be well supplied with clothes and every thing else that was requisite. After bowing very respectfully and offering us wine, they withdrew.

On the 5th day of the moon, our boats and supplies being ready, we embarked upon the river Ket, and left Makofsky.

* A *chang* is a measure of 10 Chinese cubits of about 14 inches each.

RIVER KET.

THE source of the Ket is at *Fo-lo-ke*, in the range of hills called *Ma-ko-fo-se-ko;* after passing Makofsky, its course is north-west as far as the town of *Na-li-mo* (Narim,) near which it falls into the river Oby *(O-pu)*. The breadth of the Ket varies, but is generally from 6 to 7 *chang*. Its course is remarkably winding. The water is of a red cast. The muskitoes are here extremely numerous. In the course of this river, four or five small villages are seen, which are exclusively inhabited by Russians. The country is level, and in most places covered with wood; in many places there are also deep bogs and morasses. The trees are the *ma-wee-sung*, *ko-sung*, *san*, *sung*, *yang-wha*, *lieu*, *yng-gao*, and *la-moey:* (Firs, larches, poplars, willows, &c.) In the mud or earth upon the banks we noticed vast numbers of swallows' nests. The animals found wild in the woods are bears, *tiao-shu* (probably sable), foxes, and the silver and brown *shoo*, (probably the piesy of Bell. i. 267).

There is here a tribe of people called by the Tongusians *Gosctiyaseko* (Ostiacks,) who possess a number of scattered habitations in the woods on each side of the Ket. They hunt the *tiao*,

and pay a fixed tribute of the skins of this animal.

After proceeding with the stream by night and by day for eleven days, we found the river suddenly much widened, and the country appeared more open, and free from wood. The water of the river became also gradually more clear, and we were less infested than before by the muskitoes. At the end of another day's progress, we reached the town of Narim, near the place where the Ket falls into the Oby; and we thus brought to an end, a voyage upon the former of these rivers, of more than 2500 *lee*.

We met here with a fish resembling generally the *sin*, but with a mouth like the *whey*. It has no scales, but has on each side of the body, three remarkable bones or protuberances. Its length is not more than 3 *che*. The Russians call it *se-te-li-li-te*, (probably sterlet, Bell, ii. 186.); the Mongals, *shu-lee*. Before the rivers are frozen, this fish comes up the Oby against the stream from the Northern Ocean in vast numbers. The people here busily employ themselves in catching it; they afterwards dry it in the sun, and preserve it, partly for their own subsistence and partly for sale.

CHAPTER V.

Arrival at and Description of Narim—Voyage down the River Oby as far as Surgute—quit the Oby, and enter the Irtish—Some Account of Samarofsky and Demiansky.

HAVING embarked on the River Ket at Makofsky, we followed the course of the stream, until it finally discharges itself into the river Oby. We passed upon our route the villages of *Senna-ya-urh* and *Kia-se-ko.* On the 16th of the moon, the day after we entered the Oby, we arrived at Narim. Here *Ja-ko*, the governor, received us, with his soldiers drawn out in line, and his colours displayed; and he afterwards invited us to his house to dine and hear music. In return for his civilities, we sent him some of the fruits, and curious kinds of rice we had brought with us from Pekin; upon which he and his son were much delighted, and they both, bowing respectfully, returned us their thanks. They also accompanied us upon our journey to the distance of 10 *lee* before they finally took their leave.

Upon the surface, and near the banks of this river, we saw vast numbers of white moths; some flying among the trees, others seemingly floating on the water. They appeared like the catkins of willow trees, when they are wafted by the wind; or the blossoms of the *yang* (poplar), when they lie on the ground.

NARIM.

THE station of Narim is situated N.W. of Makofsky, and is distant from it by water above 2500 lee. The river Oby rises in the south, and runs to the N.W. after it passes this station. It is equal in size to the river Enisee. The Ket rises in the S. E. and near this spot falls into the Oby. There are here two Christian churches, and forty or fifty resident Russian families. The officer who governs this station is named *Ja-ko Yee-fan-na-tchee.* He has no garrison.

Proceeding from Narim down the Oby, we reached, on the 5th day, (the 24th of the moon,) the town of Surgute* *(Su-urh-hu-te.)* The day after we had left Narim, a violent gale arose; and, the waves running very high, our

* Bell, ii. 192.

boats were tossed about exceedingly. The Russians are not expert in the management of their vessels like our Chinese boatmen. The moment there is any danger, they are happy to get close to the bank of the river; and if they can retreat out of the stream altogether into some small creek, then only they begin to be at ease. At some distance from Surgute we met the governor, who came out to attend and conduct us to his habitation, Here he showed us several live *yn-shoo* (piessy of Bell,) and entertained us with European music.

The town of Surgute has been recently destroyed by fire; and the houses not being yet rebuilt, we could not be accommodated on shore; we therefore slept in our boats during the two nights that we remained here. On the 27th of the moon we recommenced our voyage, and the governor paid us the compliment of accompanying us to a considerable distance. After taking his leave of us, he sailed back against the stream to Surgute. We performed in two days a voyage of 600 lee; and on the 29th of the moon, we reached Samarofsky,* (*Sa-ma-urh-se-ko.*)

* Bell, ii. 195.

SURGUTE.

THE station of Surgute lies to the N. W. of Narim, and at a distance, according to the course of the Oby, of more than 1400 lee. The Oby rises in the S. E. and afterwards takes a S. W. direction, till it forms a junction with the river Irtish (*Ge-urh-tsee-se*). The united stream then runs due north, and discharges itself into the Northern Ocean. This river is equal in size to the Enisee. The water is thick and the current slow. The river rises very high at times, and it then overflows its banks in all directions. The sand-banks and islands in it are very numerous. The country on each side is level, and covered with wood. The trees are the *sung*, the *san*, the *yang-wha* and *yng-gao*, (firs, larches, poplars, &c.) The banks are thickly grown with osiers. In these woods a tribe of Ostiacks have their scattered habitations. The town of Surgute formerly contained three churches and upwards of 200 dwelling-houses, but as it has since been destroyed by fire, and only a small part of the town is yet rebuilt, at present most of the habitations are mere caves or hovels. It is under the government of a Russian officer with a garrison of 100 men.

Some time before we arrived at Samarofsky, we were met by *Ko-le-kuo-le* the governor, who came to invite us to partake of an entertainment at his house. His wife came out upon this occasion, and presented us with wine. He afterwards invited us to go out hunting with him.

On the 16th of the 6th moon, he sent forward a Russian messenger to Tobolsky, to announce the approach of the Ambassadors of the Great Nation, and the occasion thereof.

From this station we continued our voyage upon the Irtish; and as our course was in the contrary direction to the stream of the river, we were obliged to be tracked by the *(Ta-ta-la)* Tartar boatmen the whole of the way.

On the 6th day of our voyage on the Irtish, being the 22d of the moon, we arrived at Demiansky* *(Te-mo-yin-se-ko.)*

SAMAROFSKY.

This town lies to the S. W. of Surgute and is distant from it by water, about 600 lee. The river Irtish rises in the south, and after passing Samarofsky, runs 20 lee further to the N. W. and then falls into the Oby.

* Bell, vol. ii. p. 203.

On the east bank of the river is a range of hills of a moderate height, and covered with forests of firs, larches and poplars. The banks nearer the river are overgrown with willows and osiers. The town lies at the foot of these hills, and consists of about 100 houses, in the occupation of 50 or more Russian families. There is also here one Christian church.

This station is without a garrison, but is under the government of an officer, who has also the direction of the government post, and of the vessels lying in the river. The country surrounding this and the two preceding stations is covered with wood: the soil is chiefly bog or morass, and as there are here no lands ploughed and sown, no cultivated fields, all the grain required for the use of the inhabitants, is obliged to be conveyed by water from Tobolsky and Tomsky (*To-mo-se-ko*), and other neighbouring districts. The style of building, the animals in domestic use, and the other peculiarities, are the same at these stations, as at Irkutsky and Yeniseik.

We stopped two days at Demiansky to repair the damages our vessels had sustained during the voyage, and to procure a fresh supply of provisions. We availed ourselves of this opportunity to partake with *Ko-le-kuo-li* the Governor,

of the amusement of hunting. On the 25th of the moon we proceeded again upon our voyage, and were accompanied by *Ko-le-kuo-li* in another vessel the whole way from hence to Tobolsky.

DEMIANSKY.

Demiansky lies to the S. W. of Samarofsky, and is 600 *lee* higher up the stream of the Irtish. The general course of the Irtish is S. W. and N. E. Its waters are thick, and the current is rapid. The size of the river is equal to that of the Selingue. The country on the eastern bank of the river, between Samarofsky and Demiansky, consists of moderately elevated hills, and plains covered entirely with forests of firs, larches, poplars and the *yng-gao*. The woods here are more close and thick than in other places. The remaining space from the foot of the hills to the water's edge is much grown over with willows or osiers. We passed ten or more villages, some situated on the one, and some on the other side of the river; each consisting of a certain number of scattered habitations of Russians, Ostiacks and Tartars, and accompanied with occasional patches of cultivated ground.

Demiansky stands in an elevated situation on

the eastern side of the river, and contains above one hundred houses, occupied by fifty or sixty Russian families. The land immediately surrounding the town is in a state of cultivation. There is here one Christian church. There is no garrison, and all the affairs of the place are subject to the jurisdiction and management of the Governor of Samarofsky.

In this country is found a bush producing a fruit called by the Russians *malina*, and by the Mongals, *honipe urtsiur*. The size and appearance of this bush is like that of the mulberry. The fruit is red and of a sub-acid taste. It is compressed when dried into a very small compass. It is found on all the hills on the banks of the Irtish in great quantities, and is exposed and carried about for sale by children, at all the principal stations.

CHAPTER VI.

Arrival at Tobolsky and Ceremonial on the Occasion—Interviews and Conferences with the Governor General of Siberia—and with another Russian Officer relative to the Interchange of Presents—Entertainment given to the Envoys by the Governor General on their Departure—and an Additional Escort appointed for their Protection.

On the 4th of the 7th moon we arrived at Tobolsky. An officer named *Yee-fan Go-fan-na-sitche* was sent by *Ko-ko-lin Ma-ti-fi-fi To-le-yu-tche* the Governor General,* to meet us at the river side and to conduct us from thence to the Government House. The guard was drawn out upon the occasion, with their colours displayed, and several other divisions of the troops were likewise drawn up in line before us, in testimony of their respect to our Sovereign's Imperial Commission.

On our entering the Government-house, *Ko-ko-lin* took us by the hand, and bowing respectfully, expressed to us his wishes that the most

* Prince Gagarin of Bell.

excellent Emperor of China might enjoy perfect health and prosperity.

Having, in return, made due enquiry after the health of the *Cha-han-Khan*,* We took our seats, and the customary compliments and civilities were interchanged. After the introductory conversation was over, *Ko-ko-lin* thus proceeded; "Since the re-establishment of peace and amity between our two empires, the people of my nation have constantly frequented China for the purposes of trade; they have now for many years successively enjoyed the benefits of your most excellent Emperor's repeated kindnesses; but never until the present time has our country been visited by any of the natives of China. Your excellencies are now however arrived in these parts, in the capacity of messengers from the heavenly empire. What is the purpose and occasion of your visit? has it any relation to the affairs of this empire?"

We replied, "The benevolence of our most excellent Emperor is like the benevolence of heaven; all the kingdoms of the earth are, in his contemplation, but as one family; to all the inhabitants of the earth he extends his protection, as to his own children. There are none,

* The Czar—Peter the Great.

therefore, upon all the earth, or throughout the whole universe, who are unawed by his greatness or insensible of his virtues, or who do not come forward to participate in the benefits which he dispenses. Thus the kings who have come in person, and the ambassadors with tribute who have been deputed to his court, amount in number, altogether, to a great multitude. Our Emperor, whether the countries from whence they come be near or remote, within or without the limits of his vast empire, receives and rewards them all with equal kindness and favour. Your kingdom of Russia is therefore not the only one which has been thus distinguished. The occasion of our coming hither at present is this; when *A-yu-ke*, the Khan of the kingdom of the Tourgouths, sent special messengers to China, to convey his respectful wishes for the health and prosperity of his Imperial Majesty, and to deliver his tributary offerings at the imperial court, his messengers came through your country, and were escorted and conducted to our empire of China by your officers: our Emperor in consequence, (upon the present occasion,) commanded his great officers of state to consult with your travelling merchant *Ha-mi-sa-eur*, respecting the route; and *Ha-mi-sa-eur* has assured us that horses and every requisite accommodation

for travelling might be relied upon. His Majesty has accordingly dispatched us by the same route upon our present mission to the residence of the Khan *A-yu-ke*. The object of the mission is solely to promulgate his Majesty's imperial edicts, and to deliver the presents his Majesty has been pleased to send to *A-yu-ke*, in testimony of his imperial favour. Our present journey has therefore no direct connexion with the affairs of your empire; but at the time we were about to depart from Pekin, his Majesty's council of state informed us, that your merchant *Ha-mi-sa-eur* had solicited permission to introduce another priest of the Russian religion into the commercial establishment at Pekin, on the plea that *Mi-ti-le*, the only Russian priest now at Pekin, is very old, and that in the event of any thing befalling him, no person would remain to perform the offices of religion: he added, that accordingly another priest would be sent to China as soon as it was known that the desired permission would be granted. The council further informed us, that they had laid this request before His Majesty, who was graciously pleased to agree thereto, and also to signify, that in case there were any good surgeons or physicians in your country, the merchant *Ha-mi-sa-eur* might bring such persons with him likewise.

"If, therefore, after we shall have accomplished the purposes of our mission, and when we are returning to Pekin, your nation is disposed to send this foreign priest, and these surgeons and physicians, we shall be ready to take them with us under our charge."

Ko-ko-lin replied, "What you have now stated exactly corresponds with the report our merchant *Ha-mi-sa-eur* has already made to us. The priest destined for Pekin is now here, and ready to proceed on his journey; but with respect to medical men, we have none of any great ability at this place. We have already sent to Moscow *(Mo-se-ko-va)* to enquire for persons of this description, but none have yet arrived here from thence: they may, however, still arrive previous to the period of your excellencies return to China."

We then enquired, "Has your sovereign the *Cha-han-Khan* yet heard of our arrival in his dominions, and of the imperial orders our most excellent Emperor has issued, directing us to proceed to the residence of the Khan of the Tourgouth Tartars through the territories of Russia? and has he sent hither any messengers upon this occasion?"

Ko-ko-lin replied, "The *Cha-han-Khan* is already fully apprized of the circumstances of your excellencies mission: the *Cha-han-Khan* has

thus spoken on the occasion: 'Since the Emperor of China proposes to send his heavenly messengers to the residence of *A-yu-ke-Khan*, you are to shew them every respect and attention, and to conduct them to the Khan's residence, taking care that there be no deficiency of horses or of any thing else that may be requisite for their accommodation on the journey.' The *Cha-han-Khan* has not, however, sent hither any special messengers on the occasion; indeed he is not at present in the city of Moscow, but is in the field, at the head of his army. When your excellencies arrive at this place on your return, the *Cha-han-Khan* may perhaps then wish to see you; and if he does so, he will undoubtedly intimate the same to you by messengers sent expressly for that purpose; but we do not yet know whether in such case your excellencies would be willing to go to meet him or not?"

Upon this we said, "When our Emperor appointed us to proceed upon our present mission, he gave us his commands, as follows. 'As peace has now long been re-established by treaty between the two empires, and as you are to pass through the dominions of Russia on your way to the residence of *A-yu-ke* Khan; the *Cha-han-Khan*, on being made acquainted therewith, will perhaps send messengers to you and invite you

to an interview, in order to enquire of you concerning places and circumstances. You are in such case to divide your party into two divisions, whereof one is to proceed to the residence of the *Cha-han-Khan*, and the other to the residence of *A-yu-ke-Khan;* but if he should expressly invite your whole party to the meeting, you are to act accordingly. Our imperial edicts have, however, already apprized *Ha-mi-sa-eur*, when he was at Pekin, that although the people of his nation annually frequent our imperial court for the purposes of trade, they can only be considered as ordinary merchants and traders; the *Cha-han-Khan* has not yet sent us any messengers with tributary offerings:* wherefore we do not now send any messengers to him, but direct the present mission exclusively to the residence of the Khan *A-yu-ke*. Nevertheless, in the event of the *Cha-han-Khan* desiring to see you in order to make enquiries concerning any places or circumstances, it will be proper that half your number should proceed to meet him in compliance therewith.'"

* It is difficult to account for this assertion, as Isbrand Ives had been previously at Pekin in the quality of ambassador, in the year 1692. It is probably meant that no recent compliment of this description had been paid to the Emperor of China, on the part of Russia, requiring a special return.

Ko-ko-lin then enquired, " Are your excellencies provided with any letters or credentials to be delivered in the event of such meeting? Whether the *Cha-han-Khan* will send his messengers to you to invite you to a conference, or not, is uncertain; but if he should do so, your excellencies must not then recede from your word which you have now given me."

We replied, " We have brought with us no letters or credentials for such purpose; but if your *Cha-han-Khan* really wishes to see us, we shall without doubt proceed immediately to meet him; what should occasion us to recede from our word on this subject!" we continued to address ourselves to *Ko-ko-lin*, and said " recently, when ten Cossacks *(Ku-se-ke)* belonging to your city of Niptchoo *(Ni-pu-tchoo)* transgressed the boundaries, and entered our Chinese territories, in order to cut wood and kill game, they were all seized and taken into safe custody by our guards and constables; and, in strictness, they ought to have been punished conformably to the article concerning the boundary, in the treaty of pacification; but our Emperor, merciful and indulgent, has generously granted to these offenders their pardon. A dispatch stating the circumstances, and announcing the gracious pardon granted by his Majesty,

has already been transmitted by the hands of your merchant *Ha-mi-sa-eur* for your *Cha-han-Khan's* information; we would wish to know whether that dispatch has reached you."

Ko-ko-lin replied, "The dispatch you speak of was duly received, and messengers were sent to the *Cha-han-Khan* with information of its contents, but I have not yet received from him any reply. When I was myself formerly Governor of Niptchoo, I remember that those who violated the boundaries were sometimes punished by having either their ears or noses slit, or their hands cut off, and sometimes they were even put to death."

The next day *Ko-ko-lin* sent an officer to invite us again to a conference; and we attended accordingly.

Ko-ko-lin began his enquiries by observing; "The dominions of the Emperor of China, who is most excellent and an image of heaven, have now for a long time reposed in peace; your excellencies also no doubt enjoy much ease and satisfaction under the influence of his imperial favour."

We replied, "Our Emperor is indeed most excellent and most divine. He rules the world upon the principles of filial piety and universal benevolence. The ministers of his government he

stimulates and encourages by the example he sets them of perfect justice and perfect fidelity. No severe (i. e. excessive) punishments are inflicted in his empire; he loves not to kill. Between the near and the remote he makes no distinction, his charity is equally extended to all. In the uttermost recesses of the mountains, and the furthest shores of the ocean, there are none who have not experienced his kindness. It has made a deep and grateful impression on the hearts of all mankind. Peace, therefore, and harmony prevail throughout the empire. The beneficial revolution of the seasons is duly enjoyed; man is long-lived, the earth prospers; all within our boundaries participate in the blessing of universal peace. We, his subjects, more especially, have enjoyed the inestimable favours of our emperor for ages; and in the present happy era, not only ourselves are tranquil and happy, but even our families are promoted; the old and the young, our wives, and our children, all are partakers of his Majesty's goodness and bounty, all are quietly and contentedly occupied in their several pursuits and employments. The sublimity and immensity indeed of his Majesty's gracious goodness are beyond all expression; the happiness and tranquillity which, through the influence of the

same, we are enabled to enjoy in our respective professions and vocations, we really have not words adequate to describe!"

Ko-ko-lin then said—"Your Emperor of China is indeed a most excellent and most divine personage; while he is thus occupied in promoting the prosperity and riches of his empire, and in preserving on all sides the blessings of peace, your Excellencies may no doubt happily and uninterruptedly follow your respective pursuits. Of these things I have indeed long since heard the report. In this empire also, while the late *Cha-han-Khan* lived, we were free from labour and care. In his reign, all men, whether of high or of low estate, rested in peace. The late *Cha-han-Khan* delighted in hunting. He loved his dogs and his hawks. He suffered his ministers to live at their ease. But latterly, for these twenty years past, our empire has been engaged in incessant wars; and to this day, we are still fighting and contending without any respite. Not only our empire of Russia, but other kingdoms also, such as those of the *Sha-chang-Khan* (the King of Persia,) the *Kon-ke-ur-Khan*, the nations of *Si-fi-ye-si-ko* (Sweden,) *Ge-na-ti-che*, *Ho-sa-ke* (Cossacks,) *Ho-la-ho-eur-pa*, *Tse-vang La-pu-tan* (Eleuths,) and *A-yu-ke* (Tourgouths); all are now engaged in wars and hostilities with each

other. China is at present the only empire which enjoys any peace or tranquillity. Our present *Cha-han-Khan*, even when he was yet a child, was always fighting and contending with the children who were his playmates. Those children are now become generals in his armies. We should have been still at rest at this time, as heretofore, if he had only followed the steps of his father.

"Your Chinese empire being thus tranquil and peaceable, and without any internal affairs to disturb it, does not your Emperor sometimes take the amusement of hunting? Does he not breed dogs or hawks for sporting?"

We replied—"Our most excellent Emperor is excellent and divine in the administration of all his affairs, whether civil or military; in his imitation of the perfection of Heaven, he is as constant as he is indefatigable. Whenever he has any leisure from the various duties of government, he devotes himself to the study of the sacred volumes of the ancient sages, and to the examination of the annals of the empire during past ages. With every thing relating to astronomy and geography; with the laws which regulate, as well as the calculations which elucidate these sciences, he is well acquainted. He is also equally heavenly and divine in his more active employments. He constantly joins in

person in the exercises of riding and of drawing the bow, in order to improve and encourage his ministers and people therein by his example. He frequently also engages in hunting and the sports of the field, in order, by such exercises, at once to increase the knowledge, and gratify the zeal of his civil and military officers, his guards, and soldiers.

"All his huntsmen and his guards receive from government on these occasions the whole of their daily supplies. The horses they ride are all government horses. Though the imperial commands be not issued to them till the evening, the whole party is assembled and ready to proceed early on the following morning. Every thing they require on this occasion is specially furnished them by government out of his Majesty's Interior Treasury.

"Thus, indeed, it is likewise with us at present. Every thing we have brought with us and have in use, we owe to the the Emperor's bounty; he leaves us under no embarrassment; our personal exertions are all he requires from us.

"Besides dogs and hawks, the Emperor keeps and feeds for sport, the *hay-tung-tsing** and the

* Probably a species of hawk. It is thus described by Grosier—"The most lively, courageous, and spirited bird of this

ya-hu. Of the *hay-tung-tsing* some are snow white, some variegated, and some of their natural colour. They are let fly after pheasants. These birds we do not rear from the nest, but only catch them as opportunities offer. The only birds which we rear for such purpose from the nests are hawks, and these are also sometimes caught. These, like the former, are let fly after pheasants and birds of that description. Among our sporting dogs, some are bred for the purpose of hunting the tiger, the wolf, the deer, and the *pao* (leopard or panther); others for hunting hares and foxes. All kinds of water-fowl, such as birds of the heron kind, ducks, and others, are pursued with the *ya-hu*, which is trained for the purpose. We have heard that in this country you have the young *hay-tsing* in its nest; we should he glad to see it."

Ko-ko-lin said—"We keep and feed the *hay-tsing* for sport, but we do not breed them; we do not even know where they build their nests." He then brought out to show us a *hay-tsing* of

country, and that which the Chinese consider as the king of their birds of prey, is the *hay-tsing*. It is very rare, and never appears but in the province of *Chensi*, and in some cantons of Tartary. When any person catches one of these birds, he is obliged to carry it to court, and present it to the Emperor's falconers."—vol. i. p. 170.

its natural colour, and also a large white sporting dog.

He afterwards said—"Your Excellencies, in coming hither, have had to perform a very long journey; you have passed through many dangerous and difficult places, and undergone much labour and fatigue. Has there been no delay or neglect at any time in furnishing you with horses and other necessary accommodation? Is the mode of travelling in this manner by water ever practised in China?"

We replied—"In China we have also similar rivers; and one larger than any of them, called the *Chang Kiang*.* In the course of our journey the officers of the station on the road have shown us every respect and attention; and your officer *Po-eur-ko-ni*, has been particularly civil and obliging throughout. Every kind of supply has been furnished by your *Cha-han-Khan* in abundance, indeed more than we wanted or could consume. Boats and horses have also been regularly provided for our use, without any omission or delay, so that, as to labour and fatigue, there really has been no such thing."

Ko-ko-lin then said—"I understand your Ex-

* Literally, the long or great river. It is named in the account of Lord Macartney's Embassy the *Yang-tse-Kiang*

cellencies have brought with you four of the attendants of *O-la-pu-tchu-cur*, a prince of the Tourgouth nation. Who is this *O-la-pu-tchu-eur?* What is the occasion of your bringing these four persons with you?"

We replied—"*O-la-pu-tchu-cur* is a nephew of the Khan *A-yu-ke*. Ten years ago, he went with his mother to the *See-tsang* country (Thibet,) to visit the *(Ta-la-la-ma)* Dalai Lama. War having broken out about that time between *A-yu-ke* and *Tse-vang-la-pu-tan,** *O-la-pu-tchu-eur* had it not in his power afterwards to return from the *See-tsang* (Thibet,) to his native country. Being in consequence in great distress, he directed his course to the Chinese empire, and threw himself under its protection.

"Our Emperor, whose charity and benevolence extends to all nations alike, and who does not willingly see a single being excluded from his proper abode, (i. e. native country,) readily received *O-la-pu-tchu-eur*, created him a prince of the empire *(Pei-tse,)* and gave him an establishment at *Tong-se-eur-ting*, just beyond the barrier called *Kai-yo-kuan*. Every year the Emperor makes him a present of silks and cattle, besides

* Tchong-kar of Grosier, vol. i. p. 319. and Kontasha of Bell, vol. i. p. 235. See also note, p. 9, of this Narrative.

a pension in money, so that he is already become very rich and comfortable in his new situation.

" Last year *A-yu-ke-Khan* sent a special messenger to our most excellent Emperor to convey his respectful wishes for his Majesty's health, and to present his tributary offerings. We are now in consequence sent in return, to make known to him his Majesty's imperial edict, and to deliver to him the presents which his Majesty is graciously pleased to bestow on him as marks of his favour. We have likewise taken the opportunity of bringing with us four of the attendants of the Prince *O-la-pu-tchu-eur*, in order that they might see the prince's father *Na-tsa-eur-ma*, and acquaint him that through the great kindness of our Emperor, *O-la-pu-tchu-eur* continues to enjoy health and prosperity.*

* This occurrence is thus related in Grosier's China, vol. i. p. 323. " When the army of the Eleuthes were ravaging the territories of Thibet, among the number of pilgrims then at *Lasa* was a Tartar princess, accompanied by her son, whose usual place of residence lay beyond the Caspian Sea, between Astracan. Saratof, and the River Jaik. Surrounded by soldiers, and exposed to their insults, she found it necessary, in so dangerous a situation, to apply to the Emperor for protection, who assigned her the revenues of some land in Tartary for her subsistence; and having afterwards obtained permission for her to pass through Siberia, the prince sent her back to her own country, under a proper escort of Chinese officers."

One day the Russian officer *Yce-fan Go-fan Na-si-che* paid us a visit, and thus enquired :— "What are the different ranks of ministers and great officers of state in China? Whom do you esteem amongst them the most honourable and exalted?"

We answered—"In our empire of China we have five ranks or orders, entitled, *Tsin-vang*, *Kiun-vang*, *Pei-le*, *Pei-tse*, and *Kuo-kung*, which orders are exclusively appropriated to the members of the imperial family, these personages being all considered as so many streams diverging from one and the same heavenly source. We have likewise other hereditary dignities; such as the *Kung*, *Heou*, *Pe*, and others, by which we ennoble the sons and grandsons of former distinguished ministers. As to the administration of the government, we have, in the interior department, great officers of state immediately attending on his Majesty's person *(Ling-she-we-ta-chin,)* and we have colaos or ministers of state *(Ta-hio-Sse)*. In the exterior departments we have the presidents of the several supreme tribunals *(Shang-shu,)* and the generals and commanders in chief of the several detached corps of the army *(Tu-tang, Chin-fung, Tong-ling,* and *Hoo-kiun-tong-ling)*. In the provinces we have Tartar generals *(Tsiang-kiun)*, viceroys

88215

(Tsung-too), and Chinese generals *(Ti-too)*. All the foregoing whom we have mentioned, are great officers of state, and hold the first rank in the empire."

Yee-fan Go-fan Na-si-che then said—"In our Russian empire, the *Cha-han-Khan* has four great officers of state immediately attached to his person, who have power, whenever any business occurs, to transact and determine it themselves, upon their own authority, and without making any previous communication on the subject to to their sovereign; have you any such great officers of state in China? And among those your Excellencies have already described, whom do you esteem the greatest and most honourable?"

We said—"In our empire of China, none of the great officers of state are empowered to transact state affairs upon their own authority; in respect to such affairs, no distinction is made between the greater and the lesser. They must, on all occasions, be regularly submitted to his Majesty; his gracious pleasure must be solicited, and his conclusive decision respectfully awaited. When the latter is received, his Majesty's ministers may then reverently proceed to the execution of the same; but none can, on such occasions so far presume as to do any thing of their own accord. Among the great officers we have

mentioned, the six officers who attend on his Majesty's person, and the six ministers of state, are the most exalted in dignity; none in the service of the government can be held to be superior."

Yee-fan Go-fan Na-si-che then said—"In our empire of Russia, when consultations are held upon great affairs of state, our *Cha-han-Khan* personally attends and assists at the council. In China, when you have consultations upon state affairs, does your Emperor attend in the same manner?"

We replied—"In China, when any important affairs of government are to be taken into consideration, the princes, and the other great officers of the state council, meet to consult, and also to decide thereon provisionally; they then report their proceedings to the Emperor and await his conclusive determination. But in our country the Emperor has no such custom as that of assisting personally in deliberations of this nature."

Yee-fan Go-fan Na-si-che then asked—"Whom among the Chinese great officers of state do your Excellencies consider to correspond in rank with our Governor General *Ko-ko-lin?*"

We said—"We should consider his rank to be about equal to that of the Presidents of our Su-

preme Tribunals, or the Viceroys of our Provinces."

Yee-fan Go-fan Na-si-che then said—"Our Governor General *Ko-ko-lin* is equal in rank to the great officers who attend on your Emperor's person. Your Excellencies, therefore, in future should not speak of our Governor as the President, but rather as the Minister or State Officer."

It was our wish to have sent a present of twelve pieces of silk to the Governor General *Ko-ko-lin*; but, on our proposing to do so, the Russian officer who superintended the supply of our table thus remarked: "Your proposal to send presents in this case, by messengers, is not agreeable to the customs of the country; but when your Excellencies personally visit the governor, you can take the presents to him with you."

We answered—"These presents are not things of any great value; but as we are come from the Chinese empire upon a long journey, and have now experienced the attentions and civilities of *Ko-ko-lin*, on the occasion of our passing through his province, it is our wish to make him some return. In China we always send presents under the charge of some person; it is not our custom personally to deliver them. Since then, it is not agreeable to your customs, on the one hand, to send presents by messengers; and since, if we

were to proceed ourselves, and deliver these things in person, we should offend against the forms and ceremonies of China, on the other; why should we, for the sake of so trifling a matter, violate the established customs and ceremonials of either country? It had much better be given up altogether."

Having consulted together, we agreed that it should be given up accordingly.

We made however a present of four pieces of silk to the Russian officer *Po-eur-ko-ni*, who had attended us a long way, and been at much trouble on our account. We also gave two pieces of silk to *Fee-ur-se*, the deputy of *Po-eur-ko-ni*.

The day previous to our proceeding on our journey, *Ko-ko-lin* sent us an invitation by a Russian officer, who said—"To-morrow your Excellencies are to proceed on your journey; will it therefore please you to come to-day to dine with the Governor General?" We accepted the invitation and went accordingly.

Ko-ko-lin having on this occasion taken particular notice of a small knife which I (*Tu-li shin*) carried with me, praising and admiring it exceedingly; I immediately loosened it from my girdle, and presented it to him. *Ko-ko-lin* then, taking off his hat, made me a bow, and accepted it. On the day of our depar-

ture he sent to me a Russian officer with a present in return, of ten fox skins of the first quality, but I excused myself from accepting them, saying—"As your Governor General is pleased to consider me as his good friend, and to send me such presents, I certainly ought to accept of them; but how can I receive presents from your Governor General, without having any thing of value in my possession to offer him in return." The officer having sent information of my reply to *Ko-ko-lin*, he dispatched other messengers again and again, to solicit and persuade me to accept of his presents. To these I said—"With us, in China, no person who is employed by his sovereign's command in the execution of the public service, can presume, on any account, to accept of the smallest present. You must therefore take back these fox skins to your Governor General, with my thanks to him for his politeness." I made a present to the officer who brought the skins of two glass cups.

On the 12th day of the moon, after having remained eight days at Tobolsky, we again proceeded on our journey. The Russian officer *Po-eûr-ko-ni Tse-pan Na-fi-tche* was appointed as before to attend upon us; and a guard of sixty soldiers was moreover added for our protection, both upon our present journey from hence to the

residence of *A-yu-ke*, and afterwards, upon our return hither from that residence. A number of Russian officers and attendants were also deputed to pay us the compliment of accompanying us to the distance of 20 *lee*, and they then returned to the city.

CHAPTER VII.

Some Account of the City and Vicinity of Tobolsky—Voyage from thence up the Tobol to Tumen—Arrival at Epantshin—proceed from thence by land and arrive at Verchaturia—cross the Oural Mountains and enter European Russia—unexpected Detention at Solikamsky and Conference with Russian Officers thereon—some Account of that Place.

TOBOLSKY lies to the S.W. of Demiansky, and is situated rather more than 600 *lee* higher up the river Irtish. The Irtish rises in the S. E. and runs to the N. E. after passing Tobolsky. The river Tobol rises in the S.W. and falls into the Irtish, in the vicinity of Tobolsky. The land on both sides of the Irtish is level and much wooded. The trees are firs, larches, poplars and willows. Along the banks of this river there are more than fifty small villages. The country on the left bank is well cultivated. The site of Tobolsky, and the country along the eastern bank of the river for about 20 *lee* northward, is a range of hills of a moderate height, with level ground at their summits. The town is without

walls or fortifications. It contains above a thousand families, who live in houses constructed of large timber. There are also two large public buildings of brick, and several Government offices built of wood in the usual manner. On the low ground, along the banks of the river, there is another portion of the town, built also of wood, and containing above 2000 families.

In Tobolsky there is a market, and twenty or more churches of the Christian religion. The garrison consists of more than 2000 men, and is commanded by upwards of ten principal officers. This garrison with the district, and the whole province of Siberia (*Se-pe-eur-sé-ko*), of which Tobolsky is the capital, is under the immediate government of *Ko-ko-lin Ma-ti-fi-fi To-eur-yu-tche*.

Here are tables, chairs, benches, carriages, litters, bedsteads, ships, boats, barges.

The musical instruments in use are bells, drums, *la-pa*, fifes, *sio-na*, fiddles and guitars.

The produce in grain consists of barley, *kaò-me* (millet,) *yeu-me* (panicum,) and *ma* (hemp.)

The vegetables cultivated are the *man-tsing*, white lettuces, melons, cucumbers, corianders, onions, leeks.

The domesticated animals, are horses, oxen, sheep, pigs, geese, ducks, fowls, dogs, cats.

There is here a race of people, whom the Rus-

sians call Tartars, *(Ta-ta-la,)* and who inhabit not only Tobolsky and its vicinity, but all the the country from the banks of the Irtish as far as Cazan *(Ko-shan.)*

Upon our making enquiry concerning the origin of this people, the Russians said: "This people was formerly subject to the *Ku-tching Khan*, otherwise called *Ho-tung*. Since the province of Tobolsky has submitted to our Empire, they have extended themselves beyond the boundary, from the feet of the *(O-eur-tai)* Altai mountains to the banks of the Irtish on one side, and as far as Cazan on the other. Some among them have conformed to our religion, but others have not." Such of this people as have not conformed to the religion of the Russians, have the appearance of being *(Hoei-tse)* Mahometans. They wear small caps, and their hair cut short. They eat no pork, and offer no sacrifices to their Divinities.

The Russian Empire is divided into eight provinces; and these provinces are administered by eight Governors General, similar in rank to the Governor General *Ko-ko-lin*. Some provinces contain ten cities, others twenty, or more. The province which extends eastward from Tobolsky as far as Niptchoo, is called Siberia. The remaining seven provinces are distinguished by

the following names: *Ko-shan-se-ko* (Cazan), *Fo-lo-ne-se-ko* (Voronetz), *Ke-yeu-se-ko* (Koursk), *Se-ma-li-en-se-ko* (Smolensk), *San Pi-ti-li-pu-eur-se-ko* (St. Petersburg), *Kuo-lo-to-ho-eur-ho-lien-se-ko*, *Mo-se-ko Va-se-ko* (Moscow).*

In this country the cultivators of the ground pay to Government a tenth of the gross produce, be it more or less.

The Buraty, Solons, Ostiacks, Vogullitz (*Vu-leang-ho*) and Kirghis (*Ki-eur-ke-si*), being hunters, pay their tribute in skins, such as sables, fox skins, and the white and brown piessy.—Those of the Buraty and Solons, who are not hunters, are charged with an annual tribute in money of 200 *ven*† per head. The soldiers in this country receive annually, some 1000, and some 700 *ven* only, but they have besides certain allowances from Government, of flour and salt, and every fifth year a cap and suit of clothes.

Here 1000 paces were formerly calculated as a mile, but now 500 only.

* This division of the Russian Empire seems inaccurate. Voltaire mentions sixteen principal Governments or Provinces, in his description of Russia, under Peter the Great.

† A thousandth of a *leang* or Chinese ounce of silver, which is reckoned equivalent to 6*s*. 8*d*. sterling.

The ceremonies, superstitions, habits and customs of the several tribes are all much alike.

On leaving Tobolsky we quitted the river Irtish and ascended the Tobol. On the 23d of the moon, after having proceeded for nine days against the stream of this river, we reached the town of Tumen.

Our boats were tracked the whole of the way by the Tartars; but the banks of the river were so overgrown with wood that there was no tracking path for them, and they were consequently obliged to wade through the water and mud. They were cut and wounded often by the stones, and the blood was running from their legs and feet under the water; but the Russian soldiers only flogged and urged them on so much the more. I could not bear the sight, and remonstrated with them, upon which they desisted.

When we arrived at Tumen, the Governor received us with the guard drawn out, and colours flying; and then conducted us to his house, where an entertainment was provided. He also sent us afterwards a present of eatables. During our stay here, we were visited in our boat by a party of Swedish captives who had been taken by the Russians in the course of the war. They sung to us, and played upon their drums and fifes, for our entertainment. We

gave them some refreshments and some money. On the 25th day of the moon, we proceeded on our journey.

EPANTSHIN.*

Epantshin (which was our next station) lies upon the river *Tu-ma* (Tula), to the N. E. of Tumen, higher up the river, and at a distance by water of about 500 lee. On both sides of the river, the firs, larches and poplars grow in abundance. The willow trees were but few. More than twenty villages were built along the banks, and the land about them was divided into fields, and well cultivated. The inhabitants were Russians and Tartars, living together indiscriminately.

Epantshin is upon the west bank of the river, and contains about 200 Russian families. There are three churches in the town, and a resident Governor, but no garrison, Here we quitted our boats, in order to continue our journey by land.

Having quitted our boats at Epantshin, our whole party proceeded from thence on horse-

* Bell, vol. i. 215. It may be here noticed that the repetition of certain names, and their distinction with a larger type, is a typographical conformity to the printed text of the original Chinese work.

back. The soil being very wet and deep, we were not able to advance more than about 30 *lee* per day. Our route was a gradual descent, and through a country on all sides covered with wood. On the ninth day of our journey, the 11th of the moon, we reached (*Fee-ye-eur-ho-tu-eur-se-ko*) Verchaturia. The Russians say that this place is in their interior country, (or Russia, in Europe,) and they in consequence received us on our arrival here with more than ordinary attentions. The Governor drew out his soldiers with their colours flying, and their drums and fifes playing. The officers and soldiers of the guard which accompanied us then drew up in rank and file, with their muskets on their shoulders, and their bayonets fixed, and in that order escorted us to the house within the town where we were to take our repose. This town lies below a range of romantic and well wooded hills; the houses are neat and clean; the river Tura (*Tu-la*) winds among them, and is covered with boats passing to and fro. The whole resembled the bustling scenes in our province of *Kiang-nan*, and inclined us to forget the vast mountains of this foreign country which we had been traversing.

VERCHATURIA.

This town lies to the N. W. of Epantshin and is distant about 400 *lee*. It is not walled or fortified. Our route hither has been over successive ridges of mountains, and through forests of firs, larches and poplars. The soil very deep and miry. Along the road were four or five small villages. The river Tura rises in the N.W. and after passing to the westward of Verchaturia runs to the S. E. The east bank of this river is high and rocky the whole of the way. There are houses at Verchaturia on both sides of the river. The population is entirely Russian, and consists of about 700 families. There are five Christian churches here, and also a market. There is a Governor residing in the town with a garrison under his command of 300 men.

We remained here two days, while the further supplies, and requisite accommodation for travelling, were providing for us. On the 14th day of the moon, we again proceeded. The

* "We descended, on the 11th, into a country finely varied with plains and rising grounds, interspersed with woods, villages, corn-fields and pasturage; and on the evening, reached the town called Verchaturia, from *verch*, which signifies high, and Tura, the name of the river on which the town stands, &c."—*Bell*, vol i. p. 204.

road still very deep and miry. On the 18th of the moon, we crossed the (*Fee-ye-eur-ho-tu-eur-se-ko Fo-lo-ka*) Verchatursky Gory or Oural Mountains. These mountains are very high, but clothed with vegetation to their summits, and streams of clear water run in veins down their sides. Close to our road on both sides, the surface was like a piece of rich embroidery spread out before us, so variegated was it with wild flowers of all descriptions. Notwithstanding the great heights to which we ascended, the soil was wet and deep throughout.

OURAL MOUNTAINS.

The passage over these mountains is about 200 *lee* N. W. of Verchaturia. The hills upon the route towards it are not very high, and are all covered with trees, such as the *ma-wee-sung*, the *ko-sung*, the *yang-wha*, the *yng-gao*, and the *la-moey*, (different species of fir, poplar, &c.) In every direction up to the summits even of the highest ranges, streams of water are met with, and the soil is consequently very wet and marshy. The ascent was about five and the descent about ten *lee*. The river running eastward from the Oural mountains, is called the Tura; and another, running from the west side, is called the Tobol. Both these rivers take afterwards a S. E. direc-

tion; and the Tura, soon after passing the town of Tumen, falls into the Tobol. The united stream then turns to the N. E., and at Tobolsky finally discharges itself into the Irtish.

There is another river called the (*Ko-mu*) Kama, which also takes its rise in the recesses of these mountains. This river is equal in size to the Selingue; its current is rapid: the water is of a reddish cast. It runs from the N. E. to the S. W. as far as the town of Cazan, in the neighbourhood of which it meets with and falls into the (*Fo-eur-ko*) Volga. To the N. W. of the Oural, there is another very high mountain called *Pe-fu-lin-se-ko*, which the natives say is inaccessible to man, and remains covered with snow both summer and winter.

On the 25th of the moon, and the seventh day of our journey from the Oural mountains, we arrived at Solikamsky (*So-le-ko-mo-se-ko*). Our route lay as before through forests and a hilly country, and the soil continued to be deep and marshy. There having been a heavy fall of snow for several days successively, the trees, the hills and dales presented to the eye at this time, one uniform prospect of dazzling whiteness. The sparkling lustre and brightness reflected on every side, made it really a wonderful sight to behold. Our direct route from Solikamsky was

by water down the river Kama; and accordingly, on the 27th of the moon, they began to prepare the barges for our accommodation; but on the third day there was another heavy fall of snow; and the snow continued afterwards to drift down the river. Upon this the Russian Officers came to us and said, "It is impossible now to proceed by water; it is therefore necessary for you to wait till the earth is hard frozen, and then you will be able to continue your journey by land." In reply we addressed ourselves to our conductor *Po-eur-ko-ni,* and strongly urged our proceeding by land immediately. But *Po-eur-ko-ni* said, "the country along the route is still very wet and marshy, and although the surface is frozen in part, there are still very dangerous places underneath, where the horses would be very liable to be injured and disabled. If we were to attempt to proceed, we should not be able to advance above 100 *lee,* and upon meeting with any stoppage, we should be in a situation of great difficulty. We must not, therefore, by any means proceed at present. Were it at all possible to do so, how could I presume to detain your Excellencies at this place. A few days delay will however suffice."

Upon the above account we waited at Solikamsky, until the end of the 9th moon. By

that time the ground was frozen completely on all sides. Four litters (sledges) were now provided for us, and on the 2d of the 10th moon, we set out accordingly in these conveyances, from Solikamsky.

SOLIKAMSKY.

This town lies to the S. W. of the Oural Mountains, and is distant from them about 200 *lee*. The surface of the country is moderately hilly, but seems gradually descending to a lower level. It is covered with forests of firs and poplars. The soil is deep and broken. The town is about 20 *lee* South of the Kama, the course of which river is from the N. E. to the S. W. A small river called the *Vu-so-eur-ko*, and also running from the N. E., passes through the middle, and afterwards falls into the Kama.

The population of Solikamsky consists of 500 or more Russian families. There are six Christian churches in this town, a public market, a resident Governor, and a garrison of 300 soldiers. To the N. W. of the town there are salt marshes. In these salt marshes above 40 wells or pits have been dug, and shaped with square frames of timber. All the water procured from these wells is a salt brine, and is boiled down to extract the salt from it. This process is car-

ried on at all places and villages in this neighbourhood. The salt thus obtained is that which is universally consumed at Moscow and other places.*

* "Solikamsky is a large and populous town, and the capital of a province of that name, which is at present annexed to the Government of Siberia.—Solikamsky is famous for having many salt pits in its neighbourhood."—*Bell*, vol. i. p. 196.

CHAPTER VIII.

Journey to, and Description of Kaygorod—Slobodskoi—Klinof—Cazan—Some Account of these Towns—Remarks on the Laws of the Russians—Continuation of the Journey to Simbirsk—Arrival at, and Description of the frontier Town of Saratof.

At the end of the third day's journey from Solikamsky, we arrived at a town called (*Kakuo-lo-to*) Kaygorod. The governor came out a long way to meet us, and then conducted us to the Government Post House, where we were to repose for the night.

KAYGOROD.

Kaygorod lies to the N.W. of Solikamsky, at a distance of about 400 lee. The River Kama runs past it in the direction of N.W. to S.E. The route to this place lay along ridges of hills, and through forests of firs and poplars. We passed on the road six or seven small villages, inhabited partly by Russians, and partly by a race of people called *Pe-eur-ma-kee*. The

land about Kaygorod was divided into fields, and cultivated. The inhabitants were all Russians, and amounted to about 200 families. In this town there are two Christian churches. The post master is also the governor, but he has no troops. Here the great roads branch off to Moscow and Cazan, the former to the N. W. and the latter to the S. W. This station is considered to be midway between Tobolsky and Moscow, the distance upon the great road each way being computed at about 2200 *lee.*

The people called *Pe-eur-ma-kee* resemble the Russians in appearance, but their language is different. Even the Russians themselves do not understand it. This people live wholly on the banks of the Kama. Upon making enquiry respecting them, we were informed that they are certainly a distinct race, but that they have now for many years submitted to the Russian empire.

On the 4th day after leaving Kaygorod, we reached *(So-lo-po-ta)* Slobodskoi. The country still covered with wood. The houses at Slobodskoi are all upon the banks of the river, and contain a population of about 5000 families, some Russians and some Swedes taken in war. The next day we proceeded to (*He-le-no-fu*) Klinof, where we were received by the governor and his guard, with colours flying; and he immediately invited

us to an entertainment at his house. We stopped here two days, while the arrangements were making for our further progress.

KLINOF.

Klinof lies to the S.W. of Kaygorod, at a distance of about 400 *lee.*

The river (*Fee-ya-te-ko*) Viatka is equal in breadth to the Selingue. Its source is in the N. E., in the recesses of the Oural Mountains. It proceeds thence in a winding course to Klinof, and afterwards takes a south-westerly direction, till it ultimately unites with the Kama.

The route hither was along the ridges of hills; the general surface of the country a gradual declivity. Here we met with populous villages on every side, and much of the country divided into fields, and cultivated. The woods and deserts, we now saw no longer, except at a distance. At Klinof there is a market, and a Russian population of about a thousand families. Seven of the Christian churches in the town are built of brick, and there are five others built of wood. There is here a resident governor, with a garrison of 300 men. In this neighbourhood is found the *Ta-tsing-too,* called by the natives *Po-lo-to-la;* and also the Otter. All the places through which we have passed hitherto, are within the province

of Siberia, and subject to the supreme jurisdiction of the Governor-General *Ko-ko-lin Ma-ti-fi-fi To-eur-yu-che.*

On the 15th of the 10th moon we quitted Klinof, and after proceeding on our journey six days, and still gradually descending from a higher to a lower region, on the 21st of the moon we reached the town of Cazan. On the right of this town winds the clear stream of the Volga. We were accommodated at the Government Post House. The night of our arrival here was still and serene. The upper part of the building afforded us a very commanding and extensive view. The moon and ten thousand stars shone in the firmament. The transparent waves of the river glided under our eyes in endless succession. This view reminded us of our own native springs, and made our hearts and souls right glad.

CAZAN.

Cazan lies to the S. W. of Klinof, distant about 500 *lee*. The river Volga, which is about equal in size to the Oby, rises in the N. W. and passes within *5 lee* S. W. of this city. It then continues its course to the S. E. The Kama approaches Cazan from the N. E., and, after passing to the S. E. at a distance of about 60 lee, falls into the

Volga. The route was over ridges of hills; the face of the country a gradual descent to a lower level.* The woods on each side consisted of three kinds of firs, and poplars; also the *kia*, the *tse*, the *yu*, the *lieu*, the *po-lo*, and the *kin-tiao*. We passed 20 or more small villages, containing a mixed population of Russians, Tartars, and another tribe called (*Che-eur-mi-se*) Tzeremish.* Cultivated fields surrounded all these villages. The country to the left, and near Cazan was also level and highly cultivated, and the forest lands only seen at a distance. Instead of regular walls, Cazan is surrounded with wooden palisades. It has 8 gates, the length from side to side is about 2 *lee*, and the circumference 8 *lee* or more. The palisades are encompassed by a ditch, and the ditch by chevaux-de-frise.† Within the city there is a market, three public edifices of wood, and five churches built of brick. The population consists of about 5000 families. The dwelling houses are all built of wood, and raised to the height of two stories. The inhabitants are a mixture of Russians, Tartars, Tzeremish, and Tourgouths. The Governor-General of the whole province of Cazan resides here: his

* Bell, vol. i. p. 22, notices this tribe.

† Literally "wooden deer's horns."

name is *Ku-pi-eur-na-te Fee-to-eur Sa-ma-lo-fi-che.* He is assisted by 10 or more inferior officers, and has a garrison here of more than 2000 men. The arts cultivated and the animals domesticated here, are the same as at Tobolsky. The water used by the people is drawn from wells made square by wooden frames. The chief productions of the soil are wheat, barley, *kao-me* (millet), *yeu-me* (panicum), and *wan-teu* (species of pulse.)

They have also apples, chestnuts, walnuts, pears, milk and honey; also *sha-kuo, pin-tse, sung-tse, yng-gao, la-moey, tu-ke-she, fa-fa-o-cha, ge-yu-ke,* and *te-ke-kiu.*

The fish caught here are the *whey, pe, fang, lee, tseu, chen, ya-tsuy-yu,** and the *sterlet.*

The Tzeremish resemble the Tartars in their external appearance, and they also wear their hair short; but their language is totally distinct, and they spring from a different origin. They are the original inhabitants of the provinces of Cazan and *O-se-ta-eur-han.* After the Russians had made themselves masters of all these places, this people still continued to occupy the country to the left of Cazan, and they have now been in subjection to the Russians for many years.

* Literally, "duck's-bill fish."

According to the laws of the Russian empire all persons who have been found guilty of treason, rebellion, or any similar offences, are executed by dividing their bodies and limbs into four quarters. Those who are guilty of deserting in time of battle are beheaded. Those also are beheaded who rob or wound travellers upon the highways, or who at any time commit murder. Persons who kill or wound each other in an affray, are made to suffer an injury equal to that which they had inflicted. Those who kill in any case with a sharp weapon are put to death. Those who cut and wound others are punished by chopping off the hand. Those who are guilty of a theft of government stores, are punished more or less severely in proportion to the value and amount of the property stolen: some have their ears or noses cut off, some are branded, some banished. Those who counterfeit the current coin, are put to death by pouring melted metal down their throats. Those who sell wine or tobacco without licenses are severely beaten, and then banished with their families. In a case of adultery, aggravated by the subsequent murder of the husband, the wife is executed by being buried alive, with her head just above ground; and the adulterer is hung on a tree. In common cases of adultery, the wife is severely

beaten, and then returned to her husband, who cannot refuse to receive her. The adulterer after being severely beaten, pays a fine to government. Young unmarried persons who cohabit, are severely beaten, and then compelled to marry.

We remained eight days at Cazan while the necessary arrangements were providing for our further progress. We set out again, on the 30th of the 10th moon; and on the third day, being the third of the 11th moon, we reached the town of (*Si-ma-pi-eur-se-ko*) Simbirsk.

SIMBIRSK.

Simbirsk lies due south of Cazan, distant about 300 *lee*. The Volga approaches Simbirsk from the the N. E., and after passing on the south side of the town continues its course to the S. W. The route from Cazan to Simbirsk is over open and extensive plains. Here there are no trees, but a considerable portion of the surface is divided into fields and cultivated. In this interval there are ten or more villages, inhabited by Russians, Tzeremish, and Tartars indiscriminately. Simbirsk is enclosed with wooden ramparts; but it is a smaller place than Cazan, and all its defences are decayed and ruinous. It has eight gates, and beyond the ramparts is a line of chevaux-de-frise. The po-

pulation is entirely Russian, and if those living upon the banks of the river, as well as those within the town are included, may amount to about 1000 families. Here there are four Christian churches, a market, a resident governor of the town, a fortification, and a garrison of about 500 men.

On the 9th day of the moon we quitted Simbirsk, after having waited there five days, while the post horses and other requisites for our journey were providing. On the afternoon of the 12th day of the moon we encountered a furious tempest of wind and snow, which quite overwhelmed us, and made it impossible for us to proceed while it lasted. We were, therefore, obliged to stop for a while on the bank of the Volga. On the 16th day of the moon, being the 4th after the above occurence, we reached Saratof (*Sa-la-to-foo*), the frontier town of the Russian dominions.

SARATOF.

SARATOF lies to the S. W. of Simbirsk, at a distance of 500 *lee*. It is the established place of intercourse between the Russian and Tourgouth nations. On the south side of the town is the Volga, which approaches it from the N. E. and runs afterwards to the southward. The

current here is slow, and the water thick and muddy. The Russians call this river the Volga, but the Tourgouths call it the (*Ge-tsee-eur*) Etchil. The route from Simbirsk to Saratof was mostly on a level plain, but there were ridges of elevated ground occasionally, and the surface of the country became gradually lower as we advanced. There were only a few trees scattered here and there. These were the *yang-wha* (poplar), *kea-tso*, *yu*, *polo*, and others. Much of the land was divided into fields and cultivated, and there were twenty or more villages upon this part of the route, inhabited promiscuously by Russians, Tzeremish, and Tartars. The inhabitants of the town were all Russians, and amounted to about 500 families. To the northward, and to the eastward of Saratof there were hills of a moderate height. The south side of the town was washed by the Volga. The east, west, and north sides were defended by a deep ditch, and the ditch was surrounded by chevaux de frise. In the river we found lying four or five vessels of 1 *chang* in breadth, by 7, or 8 *chang* in length; one vessel 2 *chang* in breadth by 10 *chang* or more in length; and of small boats and barges there were 50 or more. Within the town there are six Christian churches, a market, a resident governor, and a garrison of 200 men.

The articles chiefly in use here are tables, couches, carriages, litters, bedsteads.

The chief produce of the soil is wheat, barley, *kao-me* (millet), *yeu-me* (panicum), *wan-teu* and hemp.

They have also here two species of rice, the wet and the dry. On our making enquiry where these two species of rice grew, the Russians informed us that they had only the dry rice growing in their country, the former being entirely imported from a district called *Ko-so-le-pa-she* in the dominions of the *Sha-chang Khan* (King of Persia). They said that all the productions of (*O-eur-mi-a-na*) Armenia, which is in the *Sha-chang-khan's* territory, are regularly imported here by the traders of that country.

They have here two kinds of turnep, the white lettuce, leeks, onions, gourds, melons.

The animals which are domesticated are horses, cows, pigs, geese, ducks, fowls, dogs, cats.

They have here a remarkable kind of fowl about the size of a goose. It has long legs, and a short tail. Some of them are variegated with black and azure; others are white with blue spots. The male bird has a crest, which is constantly changing its colour. When the bird is pursued, it utters a loud cry, spreads its wings, raises its feathers, and drops its crest. The peo-

ple here keep and feed these birds in great numbers. The Russians say that the bird was first found in the *Ni-mo-tsin* country, and that it was from thence that the breed was obtained. They are also now common in *Fan-see* (France). *Ni-mo-tsin* is a part of the country which the Russians call Sweden.*

In this river (the Volga) are found the *sun, whey, chu-lu, pe, lien-tse, fang, lee, tsee, shen, ya-tsuy-yu, hoan,* and the sterlet.

By the latter end of the second moon the snow entirely disappeared, and the ice which had lain on the Volga was broken up and dissolved. In the beginning of the succeeding month the vegetables began to grow, and the trees to put forth their leaves.

* These birds, which appeared so remarkable to the Chinese traveller, were most probably turkies.

CHAPTER IX.

Miscellaneous Remarks upon the Russian Empire—Climate—Population—Habits and Customs of the People—Husbandry—National Character—Mode of computing Time—Religious Ceremonies—Origin and Ancient History of the Russians—Date of the Assumption of the Title of Khan—Subsequent Conquests—War with Sweden—Battles of Narva and Poltava—Flight of Charles XII. into Turkey—Names of the Chief Tribes and Nations bordering on the Russian Territories.

THE climate of Russia is cold and moist, rain and snow are in excess. There is much cloudy, and little fine weather.

The Empire is very extensive; it abounds in vast forests, but the habitations are only thinly scattered.

The customs of the country do not make any very marked distinctions between the higher and the lower classes. When an inferior meets his superior, he takes off his hat and bows standing; the superior remains covered. When men of equal condition meet upon the road or elsewhere, they likewise take off their hats and

bow to each other, still standing. When persons of different sexes meet, the man takes off his hat, and the woman bows to him standing.

It is their custom to shave the mustachios for the sake of the appearance; but a fine queue of hair is much admired.

When they design to marry, they settle the terms of the marriage by the intervention of negotiators. When the day arrives for the bridegroom to receive his bride, they go together to a church, and kneel down and pray. From that time they live together as man and wife.

They use coffins in the interment of their dead. As soon as the corpse has been inclosed in the coffin, they carry it into a temple, and there bury it. They erect monuments; but have no funeral ceremonies.

Wine is drank upon all joyful occasions. Whenever a friend or a relation arrives he must always be welcomed with wine. Of the use of tea they are ignorant. Their garments are either of linen or woollen cloth. Their food consists of cakes (i. e. loaves) made of wheaten flour, and also of all kinds of flesh and fish; but they eat no rice. When eating, they use spoons and small forks, but no chop-sticks.

The farmers amongst them are few, the

traders and merchants are many. They understand the art of sowing, but not that of weeding. Neither do they plough with oxen. The people of this country dwell mostly on the banks of rivers, or in places where they have the convenience of water. They are fond of bathing, and are expert swimmers.

They eat fruits of the melon kind, and have them of all sizes.

They use silver coins of various denominations; some of 3 *ven*,* some of 10, some of 50, and some of an hundred *ven*. They have also a large red copper coin, which they use in exchange for the smaller silver coins.

According to their mode of computation, 16 *tsun* (inches) are equal to one *che* (cubit or foot); 12 *leang* (ounces), 1 *kin* (pound); and a 1000 *pu* (paces), 1 *lee* (mile.)

The Russians are naturally vain and ambitious; but they live together peaceably. They delight in pleasantry and ridicule. They are not much given to quarrelling and fighting; but they are fond of litigation. Upon their holidays and festivals the men assemble together, and drink till they are drunk; they then fall to singing and dancing.

* Thousandth of a *leang* of silver, which is computed to be equivalent to 6*s*. 8*d*. sterling.

The women observe no rules of retirement: they vie with each other in ornamenting their persons, and gad about everywhere according to their pleasure. They even assemble together sometimes and sing on the public roads.

We enquired how they computed time and the seasons. They said they had no almanacks, but ascertained all their particular days and seasons, by referring to their sacred books. They pay no regard to the full and change of the moon, but compute their time by months which vary from 29 to 30 and 31 days each. They are acquainted with our division of the year into four seasons.

The 16th of the 12th moon, of the 51st year of our Emperor *Kang-hee*, was their mid-winter day, the end of their principal fast, and also the first day of their new year. On the 21st day of the same moon they baptized their *Fo*. The first day of their succeeding year was the 27th of the 11th moon of the 52d year of *Kang-Hee*. On the 3d of the 12th moon of the same year, they again baptized their *Fo*.*

* This statement is of some importance, as it enables us, at least very nearly, to verify all the other dates throughout the narrative, according to our mode of computation.

As we know from other sources, that the 51st year of the

Their days of religious abstinence are very numerous. From the sovereign down to the lowest of his subjects, people of every description who profess the Russian religion, the men, the women and the children, all observe four great fasts in each year, computed according to the four seasons. These fasts vary in length from 40 to 30 days; but there are altogether seven fasts observed commonly by the people. They abstain moreover from eating meats, two days out of every seven.

The people are apparently frugal and prudent

Emperor *Kang-hy*, corresponded nearly to the year 1712 of our era, we further ascertain from this text, that the 16th of the 12th moon was the 1st of January old style, or 12th of January, new style, 1713; and in the same manner, that the 27th of the 11th moon of the 52d of *Kang-hy* was the 1st of January, old style, or 12th of January, new style, 1714.

Lord Macartney, in his account of Russia, published in the account of his life by Mr. Barrow, observes, "St. Philip's fast is also immoveable, beginning on the 15th of November, and continuing to the 25th December," and not to the end of the year as here stated:—but with respect to the ceremony which the Chinese narrator calls baptizing Fo, and which he states to occur on the 6th day of each year, we find an express notice of the custom on that day, in the following remark—"On the twelfth day or Epiphany, they have a very singular ceremony of christening or blessing the water."—vol. ii. p. 67.

in their habits; but their houses are damp and uncleanly. They are very respectful and obedient to their laws; the use of arms and military service are their aversion.

Formerly the Russian sovereigns did not bear the title of *Khan*. Their country was originally a poor insignificant spot called *Ki-yeu* (Kiow) in the vicinity of the north-western ocean; its limits at that time were extremely confined. It remained in this state till the time of *Yee-fan Va-she-lu-yu-tche* (John Basilovich). This prince was upon bad terms with his relations, and they at length revolted against him. Being himself weak and defenceless he applied on this occasion to the King of Sweden for assistance. The King of Sweden agreed to grant him the aid of 8000 men, together with money and provisions sufficient to maintain them, but desired that he would, in return for this service, cede to him the Russian city of (*Na-eur-va*) Narva. Basilovich agreed to their terms, and accordingly surrendered to the Swedes the city of Narva. He was enabled afterwards by means of their assistance to vanquish all his revolted relatives; and upon this success he assumed to himself the title of *Khan*. Since that period, which is now about 300 years ago, the strength and revenues

of this nation have been constantly increasing. They first reduced under their subjection, the provinces of Cazan and Tobolsky: and they have since possessed themselves of those of (*Ye-ni-sei*) Yeniseik, (*Ge-eur-kee*) Irkutsky, and (*Ne-pu-tchoo*) Niptchoo; so that their empire is now become very extensive.

The name of the present *Cha-han Khan* and sovereign of Russia, is *Piao-to-eur Ge-li-ke Sie-ye-fi-che.* He is forty one years of age, and has reigned twenty-eight years. The city where he resides is called (*Mo-se-ko-va*) Moscow. This *Cha-han Khan* sent an embassador to the King of Sweden to demand back the city of Narva; but to this the King of Sweden would not agree: in consequence of which the Russians and Swedes immediately became enemies, and have now continued to be so for these last fifteen years.

The Swedish king's name is *Ko-lu-to*(Charles). He is thirty-three years of age. The city in which he resides is called *Se-tiao-ko-eur-na* (Stockholm). At the commencement of the war, the Russian soldiers were defeated by him, and great numbers of them were killed or taken prisoners.

Afterwards, in another battle, the Russian

Cha-han Khan was successful in his turn, and he defeated and wounded great numbers. He, the King of Sweden, also lost several of his cities, and being driven to great extremities, was obliged to take refuge in the little city of *Go-che-ko-fu* (Otchakof), a place subject to *Kung-ke-eur Khan*, the sovereign of the kingdom of *Tu-lee-ye-se-ko* (Turkey). This event happened about eight years ago.

There was also a prince named *Mu-eur-kee-le-se*, a sovereign of a little kingdom on the borders of the King of Persia's dominions, but inhabited by a distinct tribe. This prince having joined the *Cha-han Khan* in the war against the Swedes, was taken prisoner by them. The *Cha-han Khan* redeemed him from his captivity, by giving up some Swedish prisoners in exchange, but he died upon his way back to his country.

The following are the names of the countries which lie to the N. W. of Russia.

Tuleyeseko	Turkey.
Sifiyeseko	Sweden.
Poeurtokolia	Portugal.
Fulantsuse	France.
Yaeurmania	Germany.
Yeetalia	Italy.

Yeesipania	Spain.
Tieyin	Denmark.
Hoeursetiyin	Holstein.
Pulusekee	Prussia.
Poeulsekee	Poland.
Piemusekee	Piedmont.
Saysalinmoosekee	Saxony.
Gangkiaeursekee	Hungary.
Holansekee	Holland.
Popolinmoosekee	Popedom.
Sepansekee	Spain.*

The following are the names of the several tribes and kingdoms south of Russia.

Tueurhute	Tourgouths.
Holahoeurpa	
Hosake	Cossacks
Tsevanglaputan	Eleuths
Pulute	Buraty.
Mangoute	
Puhoeur	
Hosaeurpashe	
Yeeurkin	

* The countries to which the Chinese author alludes, can only be given conjecturally, according to the most plausible analogy; and here, even this resource fails with regard to the last name, unless we may suppose that Spain, by mistake, is included twice in the catalogue.

Hoshehouer
Kutse
Okesoo
Tueurmen
Shachang Persia.

CHAPTER X.

Dispatch of a Messenger from Saratof to the Head-Quarters of the Tourgouths—Arrival of a Deputation from the Khan of the Tourgouths at Saratof—also of Officers bearing Presents from one of the Tourgouth Princes—Conference with the Officers respecting the Presents—Departure from Saratof and Journey to the Head Quarters of the Tourgouths upon the Banks of the Lake Manuto—Extraordinary Honours paid to the Envoys upon their route—Ceremonial of their Introduction to the Khan, and of the delivery to him of the Imperial Edict—Particulars of a Conversation with the Khan at that Interview.

Our conductor the Russian officer *Po-eur-ko-ni Ye-se-pan-no-fi-che* dispatched a military officer and an interpreter from Saratof to *A-yu-ke Khan's* quarters with a message as follows. "The ambassadors of the heavenly empire are arrived, and residing at our frontier town of Saratof; pray send hither quickly an escort of officers and men to meet them; and also horses and whatever else may be requisite for their journey."

At this time the snow lay deep on the ground, and made it impracticable for a large party to

advance further. We therefore established our quarters at Saratof, and awaited there the arrival of the expected escort from the *Khan A-yu-ke.*

In the mean while, notwithstanding the rigour of the season, we were successively entertained with feasts, and with parties of pleasure, either for shooting with bows and arrows, riding, or fishing on the banks of the river.

When the interpreter and the others dispatched by the Russian officers to the kingdom of the Tourgouths had arrived there and delivered their message to *A-yu-ke Khan,* he was highly pleased, and immediately gave instructions for the assembling of his tribes, and for the providing of tents, carpets, clothing, and all other requisites for our accommodation; and these were kept in readiness to join us at Saratof as soon as the spring was sufficiently advanced for the journey.

On the 5th day of the 4th moon of the 53d year of *Kang-hee, A-yu-ki, Khan* of the Tourgouth nation, sent to us his *Tai-ki* (officer) *Gouching* and others, to express the respectful wishes he entertained for the perfect felicity of the most excellent Emperor; and also to make enquiries in his name after the health of the heavenly messengers.

On the 6th day of the 5th moon we crossed the Volga, but our horses and travelling furni-

ture not being yet ready, we had to wait some time longer.

On the 18th day of the moon, a *Taiki* or officer, named *No-eur-mu-eur-kin*, of the district of *Sae-sung Chao-te-pa*, was sent to us from *Na-tsa-eur-ma-moo* the father of the prince *O-la-pu-tchu-eur*. This officer brought a present of two horses to each of us, the four principals of the mission; and also a present of one horse each, to *Shu-ko* and his three colleagues. He addressed us to this effect: "My superior and chieftain commands me to say to you, that his son *O-la-pu-tchu-eur*, when a wanderer in distress, having been entertained by your most excellent emperor with the greatest favour and kindness, and abundantly supplied with every thing he could desire; he is filled with the utmost gratitude for these obligations, and wishes he could at once present himself at the gates of your divine Emperor's palace, in order both to offer to his Majesty his personal thanks, and to have the happiness of beholding his imperial countenance. He greatly regrets that the immense distance makes it impossible for him to do so: but having recently heard that his Imperial Majesty has issued an imperial edict, and has sent it hither by the hands of his heavenly messengers, he has availed himself of this glorious and happy

occasion, and has sent me to you for the express purpose of offering his respectful wishes for the happiness of your most excellent Emperor, and at the same time of enquiring after the healths of the heavenly messengers, to whom he has also sent under my charge some horses for the favour of their acceptance."

We replied—"Your superior and chieftain, *Na-tsa-eur-ma-moo*, having, out of gratitude for our Emperor's great favours, sent you hither to express to us his respectful wishes for the Emperor's felicity, and to deliver to us presents of horses, has acted with the greatest good sense and propriety; but the object of our present mission is no other than to proceed directly to the residence of your *Khan*, and then to announce and deliver to him the Emperor's edict: we are still only upon our route thither, and your *Khan* has already provided us with as many horses as are requisite for the journey; for more than these we have no use or occasion. We will, however, readily undertake to report to his Imperial Majesty, upon our return, the gratitude evinced by your chieftain, *Na-tsa-eur-ma-moo*, for the goodness of his Majesty towards him, and especially the present circumstance, of his having sent you to us to convey his respectful wishes, and to offer presents of horses for our acceptance." The horses were sent back accordingly.

On the 20th of the moon, we proceeded upon our journey; and, on the 1st day of the 6th moon, having travelled ten days, we at length arrived at the head-quarters of *A-yu-ke*, the Khan of the Tourgouth nation, which are situated at present upon the banks of the lake *Ma-nu-to*. The *tai-kis* and priests were sent out by *A-yu-ke* to meet us upon the road, and to conduct us to the place prepared for our accommodation.—Accordingly, upon our approach, we found all the *tai-kis*, the priests, and the several chiefs of such of the *Man-gou-te* tribes as are subject to *A-yu-ke*, drawn up in lines upon the road, together with their followers, to pay their respects to us. Their flocks and herds were also collected and displayed, and tables, covered with provisions, laid out before us. All the people had come out to a very considerable distance to meet us; great numbers of them even knelt down at our horses heads, and in that posture offered their various eatables to our acceptance; and in all things they testified to us the utmost respect and attention.

In the afternoon, *A-yu-ke Khan* sent *Ko-va*, one of the priests who was immediately attached to his person, and others, to wait on us, and to say—"Our *Khan* proposes to-morrow, it

being a fortunate day, to have an interview with your Excellencies, and to receive in form the edict of the Most Excellent Emperor."

Accordingly, on the 2d day of the moon, we proceeded to wait on the *Khan*, taking with us the Imperial Edict, and followed by the *tai-kis* and priests of the Tourgouths in procession, and by our guard of Russian soldiers and officers. On arriving at *A-yu-ke Khan*'s great tent of ceremony, we dismounted from our horses, and advancing with the Imperial Edict, delivered it in person. *A-yu-ke* received it kneeling;* and then, turning towards the north, reverently wished the great Emperor of the East every felicity. This ceremony being concluded, we then proceeded to explain to him his Imperial Majesty's pleasure.

"Our Emperor," we said, "enquires, in his Edict, after the *Khan*'s health. Being desirous of sending back to you your nephew *O-la-pu-*

* Nothing certainly can be more improbable than that an independent prince, in the midst of his own court, should have voluntarily subjected himself to such a humiliation;—but it seems that the assumed attribute of universal sovereignty, which occasions every communication from the Emperor of China to claim the authority of an *Edict*, also requires that such an edict should be supposed to have been received in the posture most expressive of submission and obedience.

tchu-eur, and thus restoring him to the bosom of his family, he has ordered that the Russian merchant *Ha-mi-sa-eur* should be consulted with on the subject. He has already sent back four of *O-la-pu-tchu-eur's* attendants, and the arrangements for the prince's own return are now in progress agreeably to his Majesty's gracious intentions. The sincere and zealous attachment you have evinced by sending to our court your envoy *Sa-mo-tan*, with respectful enquiries and valuable offerings, his Majesty particularly notices and applauds; and in consequence specially deputes the Eleuth *Shu-ko-mi-se* and us, to declare to you his imperial edict, and to deliver to you the presents which he sends you as marks of his favour.

A-yu-ke Khan having expressed himself very grateful to his Majesty, invited us to sit down on his right hand; the music then began to play, and an entertainment was served up before us.

A-yu-ke Khan having afterwards enquired of us respectfully concerning the venerable age of his Majesty, we informed him that our Emperor was born in the year *Kia-Vu*, and was at this time in the 61st year of his age.

A-yu-ke Khan then enquired, what was the number of the imperial princes, his Majesty's sons.

We said, "Those of his Majesty's sons who usually accompany him on his hunting excursions, some of whom are decorated with the titles of *Ching Vang*, *Kiun Vang*, *Pei-le*, *Pei-tse*, are 16 in number; how many more sons his Majesty may have, who, on account of their youth, have not yet gone beyond the precincts of the palace, we know not, as under such circumstances we can have no opportunity of seeing them.

A-yu-ke Khan then enquired the number of the imperial princesses, his Majesty's daughters.

We said, "We have heard that above 10 of his Majesty's daughters are already settled in marriage; but respecting the number of those who may be still within the precincts of the palace, we know nothing."

A-yu-ke Khan continued his enquiries by saying, "I have understood that his Imperial Majesty, in order to avoid the summer heats, visits every year his country residence, and there partakes of the diversion of hunting. What is the name of the place? how far is it from the capital? when does his Majesty proceed to it? and when does he return from it?"

We replied, "The place which our Emperor visits in order to avoid the summer heats is called *Je-ho* or *Ko-la-ho-tun*. It is seven or eight days'

journey from the imperial city. Every year, about the latter end of the 4th, or the beginning of the 5th moon, his Majesty sets out upon this journey. In the mid-autumn, or immediately after the last day of deer hunting, which occurs in the course of the 9th moon, his Majesty always returns to his capital."

A-yu-ke Khan further enquired respecting the mountains, rivers, trees and other vegetable productions of that country. We added; "*Je-ho* is situated beyond the boundary line of the Great Wall. There are there both high mountains and great rivers. The water is peculiarly sweet and excellent. The woods, as well as all other vegetation, are extremely luxuriant. Various kinds of beasts and birds, are also found there in great abundance."

A-yu-ke Khan continued his enquiries, saying, "how do the people plough and sow the earth in your Emperor's country? do the times of sowing depend on the rainy seasons; or are the fields overflowed artificially."

We replied, "In the empire of China, we plant or sow all the five species of grain, and also the various kinds of vegetables. In some places the fields are overflowed by art, in others they are watered by the rains only, and sown accordingly."

A-yu-ke Khan next enquired, "How far is the original seat of his Majesty's ancestors from the imperial city; and what is the population of that quarter."

We replied, "The place you speak of is called *Shing-king* (Mougden), and is distant from the imperial court about 20 days' journey. The country in that quarter is very populous. Five great tribunals are established, with suitable officers in each, for the administration of the civil government, and there are besides three general officers of the highest rank stationed there for the purpose of holding the country in due subjection."

A-yu-ke Khan continuing, said, "The Mantchoos and the Mongals bear a great resemblance to each other: I imagine therefore that they sprang anciently from the same origin. But how has it happened that they have since formed separate states and nations? The causes of this are no doubt well known to your Emperor. I accordingly must request your Excellencies to remember, when you return to your court, to notice these my enquiries to his Majesty, and to solicit his Majesty to condescend to instruct me upon this point, by the opportunity of the return of my envoy from his imperial presence."

In reply, we promised upon our return to

court, to address his Majesty on the subject, agreeably to his desire.

A-yu-ke Khan proceeded to enquire, why the Mantchoo tribes were divided into two classes, some being termed the Ancient Mantchoos, and others the New Mantchoos.

We replied, "Those Mantchoos who were originally residents at *Shing-king*, and were among the followers of the Emperors *Tay-tsou* and *Tay-tsong*,* we denominate, as well as all their children and descendants, the Ancient Mantchoos; but those who have come since to reside within the limits of the territory of *Shing-king*, and who have only been in the service of our Emperors since the removal of the court to the present capital, we denominate the New Mantchoos."

A-yu-ke Khan then asked, "Are the Mantchoo and Mongal written characters the same or different? by whom were they invented, and how handed down to the present generation."

We replied, "Our Mantchoo characters are considerably different from the Mongal characters in many respects; our Emperor *Tay Tsou* was the first establisher of the 12 initial characters; our Emperor *Tay-tsing* afterwards added

* The immediate ancestors of the first Chinese Emperor of the reigning Mantchoo Tartar dynasty.

the marginal circles and dots, and immutably settled the pronunciation. It is now a character capable of infinite changes and combinations; and equally elegant as copious."

A-yu-ke Khan proceeded to observe, "Many years ago I heard that in the dominions of your Emperor there was a certain *Pin-see-vang* (royal pacificator of the west) who had raised a rebellion. In what year did your Emperor subdue and destroy him? Are there any partizans or descendants of the rebels remaining?"

We replied, "*Pin-see-vang* had received great favours from our Emperor. In recompense for his small and weak services, his Majesty was graciously pleased to dignify him with the title of king, and to establish him with great honour and credit in the province of Yunnan, which lies at the south-western extremity of our Chinese empire: but he not only proved himself unworthy of such favour, but ungratefully broke out into rebellion. Our Emperor was in consequence greatly incensed, and immediately dispatched forces against him, by which he and all his adherents were completely destroyed and exterminated. The laws and statutes of our Chinese empire will by no means permit the existence of any of the descendants or adherents of those who thus revolt against their country,

and forget the favours that had been conferred on them. This rebellion took place in the year *Quee-cheu* (A. D. 1673); and it is now above 40 years since the complete restoration of tranquillity."*

Continuing our discourse to *A-yu-ke Khan*, we said to him, "on our departure upon our present mission, we received the imperial commands, signifying his Majesty's desire of sending back the prince *O-la-pu-tchu-eur*, and restoring him to his family: but, if the prince were to return by the route which lies in the direction of the territories of *Tse-vang La-pu-tan*, *Tse-vang La-pu-tan* not being at peace with your nation, might possibly engage his western neighbours, the *Ho-sa-ke* and *Ho-la Ho-eur-pa* nations, to do the prince some harm. It will not therefore be expedient for him to take that route; he must of necessity take the route through the Russian dominions, and his return will thus be secure. We have been expressly instructed to confer with your Majesty relative to the settlement of this business, in order that, upon our return to our court, we may communicate the result to his Imperial

* The particulars of this rebellion are stated at length in the Histoire de la Chine, by Mailla, vol. xi. p. 65 et seq.: *Pin-see-vang* is there spoken of under his proper name of *Ou-san-Kouei*, the former being only an assumed title.

Majesty, and the Prince *O-la-pu-tchu-eur* be sent back to you accordingly."

A-yu-ke Khan said, "The father and elder brethren of *O-la-pu-tchu-eur* are to consult with me on the subject, and as soon as they have come to a final determination, I will acquaint your Excellencies therewith."

In conclusion, we observed to *A-yu-ke Khan*, "it is now already some years since we set out upon our present mission. We have at length happily reached our destination, and we have delivered our Emperor's imperial edict into the hands of your Majesty. Our principal business here is thus concluded. As soon therefore as the affair of the return of the prince *O-la-pu-tchu-eur* is arranged, we ought to set out upon our return.

A-yu-ke Khan said, "Certainly; I shall by no means presume to detain your Excellencies."

In going and returning (on the occasion of the present visit) we were escorted by the troops of *A-yu-ke Khan* and by our Russian guard; and we were saluted in passing by music and the firing of cannon.*

* Mr. Bell, (to whose nearly cotemporary authority, the translator is so much indebted for the illustration of the present work,) has given in the course of his Narrative of a Journey to Derbent, the following interesting account of an in-

terview which took place between this Prince of the Tourgouths and the Emperor Peter the Great in 1722, about nine years subsequent to the visit of the Chinese Embassy.

"At this place (Saratoff) we came up with the Emperor, who had appointed an interview with the Ayuka-Chan, King of the Kalmucks; the Chan, for that purpose, had his tents pitched on the east banks of the Volga, not far from the river.

"Next day, his Majesty invited the Ayuka-Chan and his queen to dinner on board the galley; which, for the accommodation of the royal guests in getting on board, was brought as near the shore as possible, and a gallery made from the shore to the galley for them to walk on.

"The Ayuka-Chan came on horseback, attended by two of the princes his sons, and escorted by a troop of about 50 of his officers and great men, all exceedingly well mounted. About twenty yards from the shore the king alighted from his horse, and was received by a privy counsellor and an officer of the guards. When the Emperor saw him advancing, he went on shore, saluted him, and, taking him by the hand, conducted him on board the galley; where he introduced him to the Empress, who was seated on the quarter deck, under a very rich awning.

"Soon after the Ayuka-Chan was got on board the galley, the queen arrived on the shore, in a covered wheel-machine, attended by one of the princesses her daughter, and two ladies, who were also escorted by a troop of horsemen. When she was alighted, the Emperor went on shore to receive her, and, conducting her on board, introduced her to the Empress.

"The Ayuka-Chan is an old man, about 70 years of age, yet is hearty and cheerful. He is a prince of great wisdom, and prudent conduct, is much respected by all his neighbours for his sincerity and plain dealing. And I recollect, that, when I was at Pekin, the Emperor of China made very honourable mention of him. By his long experience he is very well acquainted with the state of affairs in the east.

"The queen was about 50 years old, of a decent and cheerful deportment; the ladies, her attendants, were young; the princess, in particular, hath a fine complexion; her hair, a jet black, which was disposed in tresses round her shoulders; and she was, in the eyes of the Kalmucks, a complete beauty. They were all richly dressed in long robes of Persian brocade, with little round caps, on the upper part of their heads, bordered with sable fur, according to the fashion of the country.

"The Emperor intimated to the Ayuka-Chan, that he would be desirous of ten thousand of his troops to accompany him into Persia. The King of the Kalmucks replied, that ten thousand were at the Emperor's service, but that he thought one half of that number would be more than sufficient to answer all his purposes; and immediately gave orders for five thousand to march directly, and join the Emperor at Terky.

"Both the Emperor and Empress were highly pleased with their guests; and, in the evening, dismissed them with suitable presents. The Empress gave the Queen a gold repeating watch, set with diamonds, which seemed very much to take her fancy, besides some pieces of brocade, and other silks of value.

"It is well worth remarking, that this treaty, between two mighty monarchs, was begun, carried on, and concluded, in less space of time than is usually employed, by the plenipotentiaries of our western European monarchs, in taking a dinner."

It is afterwards stated, that the five thousand Kalmucks actually arrived, according to the agreement, and that their assistance was of considerable service to the Russians in the Persian expedition.

CHAPTER XI.

The Khan desires to see the Mantchoo Tartar Archers in the suite of the Envoy—their Visit to the Khan—Conference with a Deputation from the Khan—Second personal interview with the Khan—Message from the Khan to the Emperor—Account of Presents received from the Tourgouth Princes—Interview with the Consort of the Khan's Eldest Son—Visit from the Khan's Youngest Son—Departure from the Head Quarters of the Tourgouths, and Return towards Tobolsky.

THE next day, the 4th of the moon, *Ta-eur-ma-pa-la,* the queen consort of *A-yu-ke Khan,* invited us to a feast and entertainment of music. Our two new Mantchoo archers were also invited, and much noticed.

On the 5th day of the moon, *Yee-she,* one of the attendants on the person of *A-yu-ke Khan,* came to us by his orders and said, "we hear that your Excellencies have in your suite two very expert archers: the king, our master, wishes to see them; pray, therefore, if you have no objection, allow them to wait on his Majesty; nevertheless, if it be inconvenient, he will not desire it."

We replied, "We have with us two New Mantchoos, who are archers by profession, but nothing more; they are by no means particularly expert: but, as your Sovereign wishes to see them, we shall order them to take their bows and arrows, and proceed accordingly."

Ko-tcha-eur-too and *Mee-kieu* attended in consequence, and took with them the bows and arrows which they had received as special gifts from his Imperial Majesty.

A-yu-ke Khan, having invited them into his presence, and desired them to take seats near him, they were served with tea and fruit. He first enquired from them their ages? then, pointing to the pears in the dish, asked whether we had that species of fruit in our Chinese empire? *Ko-tcha-eur-too* answered in the affirmative. *A-yu-ke Khan* proceeded to ask what other fruits we had in China; *Ko-tcha-eur-too* replied, that our fruits in China were very various, and too many to enumerate.

A-yu-ke Khan next asked them how far the country of their nativity was distant from the metropolis; *Ko-tcha-eur-too* replied, that when travellers proceeded thither from the imperial city, on horseback, they performed the journey in about three moons. *A-yu-ke Khan* then enquired of them, whether their country was hot or cold,

whether rain or snow abounded or not, and whether it was remarkable for its mountains, rivers or forests. *Ko-tcha-eur-too* replied, "In the country to which I and my family belong, the summer months are not very warm, and the winter months exceedingly cold. The quantity of rain and snow which falls is uncertain. In ordinary winters the snow lies upon the ground to the depth of 2 or 3 *che* (cubits): but in severe winters the depth of the snow is 4 to 5 *che*, and more. The mountains are high and rugged; the forests thick and close; the rivers and torrents extremely numerous. The most remarkable among them, are the *He-lung-kiang** and the *Niai-men*."

A-yu-ke Khan further enquired, whether the water of these rivers were sweet or bitter. *Ko-tcha-eur-too* said, "the water in these rivers is sweet and beautifully clear: even in the narrow passes, where the current meets with interruption, the beauty and clearness of the water remains unchanged."

A-yu-ke Khan asked, what kinds of fish were found in these rivers, and what wild animals in the mountains? *Ko-tcha-eur-too* replied, "the kinds of fish met with in these rivers are very

* The former is the Amour or Sagalien Oula of our maps; the latter is uncertain.

many. Among others is the *whang-yu*, a fish which grows to the length of 10 to 20 *che* or more, and is caught by the Solons and *Ta-hu-eur* (Daourians) for the purpose of being offered as tribute to the Emperor. In the mountains there are tigers, panthers, bears, wolves, wild boars, deer, *pao*, *kan-ta-han* (elks), and other similar animals."

A-yu-ke Khan asked, whether the people tilled and sowed the land in that country; what kind of houses they lived in; and what species of animals they kept for their domestic use?

Ko-tcha-eur-too replied, "They do not till or sow the land; they are occupied in the pursuit of game, and live entirely by hunting. They have no fixed habitations, but migrate from place to place, in the same manner as is practised by your Majesty's subjects. They rear and feed no animals besides their horses."

After this conversation they took up their bows and arrows, and shot at a tree as a mark. *A-yu-ke Khan* expressed his admiration at their dexterity; upon which *Ko-tcha-eur-too* said, "We are by no means good archers; we are mere learners from the schools; but there are archers where our Emperor resides, who shoot with the strong bow, and are skilled in the art in all its branches."

A-yu-ke Khan then took one of the bows into his own hands; and after examining it, asked, whether the horn of which it was constructed was bullock's horn?

Ko-tcha-eur-too replied, "In the southern parts of our Chinese empire we have an animal called a buffalo or water bullock. This is buffalo's horn."

A-yu-ke Khan enquired, what was the size of the buffalo, and what was the colour of the animal?

Ko-tcha-eur-too replied, "I happen to have had an opportunity of seeing these animals, the Emperor my sovereign having once sent me, upon service, to the southern province of *Houquang*. They are somewhat larger than the common bullock, and the colour of their hide is nearly the same as that of the camel."

A-yu-ke Khan next enquired of *Ko-tcha-eur-too*, whether he happened to know what kind of bow his Imperial Majesty himself used? whether his Majesty ever practised shooting at a target; and if so, whether his Majesty was successful in hitting the mark.

Ko-tcha-eur-too said, "The bow used by his Majesty is similar in its form and mode of construction to the ordinary bow, but the finest and most perfect horn is always selected for the pur-

pose, and is put together with the wood of the *wha-pee.* His Majesty frequently practises shooting at a target, and generally hits the mark 8 or 9 times out of 10."

A-yu-ke Khan asked, whether in our empire the native Chinese were also accustomed to shoot with bows and arrows or not; and whether or not we had brought with us any of the military arms which we used in warfare?

Ko-tcha-eur-too replied, " In China the Green division of the Emperor's army is formed wholly of native Chinese. In all the provincial stations, and principal posts on the frontiers, we have always great numbers of excellent archers. His Majesty from time to time exchanges the soldiers stationed at these posts, with those on duty about the imperial court, expressly with a view to their practising and perfecting themselves in riding and archery, and to afford an opportunity of encouraging and rewarding them according to their deserts. When our troops take the field, they carry with them cannon, musketry, swords, spears, bows and arrows, and arms of many other kinds; but, excepting our bows and arrows, we have brought nothing of the kind with us at present."

A-yu-ke Khan again looked at the bows and admired them. He then asked *Ko-tcha-eur-too*

whether, beyond his native country, there were any other countries or kingdoms? how far distant it was from the sea? and whether he had himself crossed the seas or not?

Ko-tcha-eur-too said, "Beyond my native country are the countries called *Pi-eur-la* and *Yu-chu-en*, the tribes of *Mo-ni-ye-eur* and *Ku-loo-ye-eur*, and many others with whose names I am unacquainted; but they all pay an annual tribute to his Imperial Majesty. The eastern sea is distant from my native country about a month's journey. I have never yet crossed the seas, but I have occasionally journeyed along the sea-coast when hunting."

A-yu-ke Khan said, that he had heard that there was a kingdom subject to the Chinese empire called *Chao-sien* (Corea); he asked whether it paid tribute to his Imperial Majesty or not; and whether *Ko-tcha-eur-too* had ever been there or not?

Ko-tcha-eur-too replied, "*Chao-Sien* is undoubtedly one of the kingdoms subject to our Chinese empire. It pays an annual tribute to our Emperor of its various productions. I never, however, visited that country.

On the same day *To-eur-chee La-pu-tan*, the younger sister of *A-yu-ke Khan*, and wife of the

Eleuth King *Go-ke-eur Too-che-chin Khan*, entertained us with a feast and with music.

On the 6th of the moon, *Sha-ke-tu-eur Chapoo*, the eldest son of *A-yu-ke Khan*, entertained us also with a feast and with music. He desired his Mongals to invite our two new Mantchoos to contend with them for the prize in archery, which our Mantchoos did accordingly in the presence of all the people, and their skill was universally admired.

On the 7th of the moon, *A-yu-ke Khan* sent to us, two of the priests attached to his person, named *O-la-moo-chen-pa* and *Ko-va*, and also *Sa-mo-tan* and others; and they addressed us in the Khan's name to the following effect: "Our King has sent us to your Excellencies to say, that it has always been his anxious wish to have it in his power to convey to his Imperial Majesty his respectful sentiments and good wishes; but to his great regret, he found the southern route closed against him, and was prevented from putting his design into execution. Lately, however, *Sa-mo-tan* and others having performed the journey by the Russian route, have succeeded in conveying our King's respectful sentiments and tributary offerings to his Imperial Majesty. Now again, your Emperor, out of his abundant kindness, has shown us extraordinary proofs of

his favour; and regardless of the great length of the journey hither, through the Russian territories, has condescended to send to us, by the hands of your Excellencies, an edict containing his imperial commands. Our King has received and perused it with the greatest delight. His heart is full of gratitude. He now wishes to dispatch an envoy to your Emperor in return: but in respect to the preparation and composition of a written address to your Emperor suited to the occasion, we foreigners, not knowing the rules and customs of China, are fearful of committing therein some impropriety or irregularity. We have been therefore instructed to consult with your Excellencies, whether it be more expedient that the address should be written, or only communicated verbally by the mouth of the Envoy; and we shall act agreeably to your determination." We replied, that the choice between a written and a verbal address, was a matter which their King himself must determine.

O-la-moo-chen-pa continued, and said, "The King our master has moreover directed us to explain to your Excellencies the circumstances which occasioned your long detention at Saratof. When the report first reached us of your Excellencies having arrived at the Russian frontier town of Saratof, the intelligence

did not appear to be authentic; but when at length certain information was received of the fact, *Wey-ching* and others were immediately ordered to proceed and wait upon your Excellencies. Upon former occasions, all envoys, coming from the Russian territories, have been escorted hither by Russians; and, on the other hand, all envoys proceeding from this country have been escorted by our people, until finally delivered over into the charge of the Russians. We therefore expected that in the present instance likewise, your Excellencies would have been escorted hither by the Russians in the same manner. This gave rise to some delay: Again, we were obliged afterwards to borrow from the Russians, the boats required for your conveyance, and consequently to wait for the return of the messengers whom we had sent to Cazan. A great deal of time was thus unavoidably expended." We replied, "this is an affair which is now passed and gone by; since we have at length accomplished the great purpose of our journey, a little delay, more or less, is of no material consequence."

O-la-moo-ghen-pa then said, "In the year *Sui-yn* (A.D. 1698, the 37th of *Kang-hee*), when *O-la-putchu-eur* left this country, our *Khan* sent at the same time an envoy to China, named *Ge-li-ke-*

Ko-shin, to offer his respectful good wishes to your Emperor, and also to present a fine black horse to his Majesty. In the year *Yee-mao* (A.D. 1699, the 38th of *Kang-hee*) he arrived at your court, and we have heard that his Imperial Majesty received him most graciously, and dismissed him with many presents; but, we know not for what reason, he never afterwards returned to this country; how, and by whom, he was waylaid on his route, to this day we are ignorant."

We replied, "We did hear at that period that your kingdom had sent an envoy with tributary offerings, and we were all of us then in office about the court; but it is now many years ago, and we were never made acquainted with the particulars."

On the 10th day of the moon, *A-yu-ke Khan* invited us again to an audience, and we waited on him accordingly.

He began by speaking on the subject of *O-la-pu-tchu-eur*, and said, "the arrangements for the return of *O-la-pu-tchu-eur* must be left to the final decision of the wisdom of his Imperial Majesty. By the southern route he certainly cannot proceed; and, with respect to that which lies through the territories of Russia, we must apply for and obtain the permission of the *Cha-han-khan* before it can be adopted. Though we

should send messengers immediately to the *Chahan Khan's* (Emperor of Russia's) residence, to make such application, it would still take a considerable time, and be a great detention to your Excellencies. If your Excellencies will therefore be pleased to set out first, I will send my messengers to the *Cha-han Khan* afterwards. When his consent is obtained, I will transmit the intelligence by my own envoy to his Imperial Majesty."

A-yu-ke Khan, continuing the conversation, enquired whether we were in the habit of receiving any envoys from the Delai Lama. We replied, "The Delai Lama sends envoys to China very frequently. We met some of the messengers of the Delai Lama on their way, while proceeding on our present journey."

A-yu-ke Khan observed—"The channels of communication not being now open, my people cannot visit the *See-tsang* country (Thibet), as they did formerly; and we, in consequence, find great difficulty in procuring medicinal drugs. I have determined therefore to solicit his Imperial Majesty to favour me with a supply of these articles, and shall be obliged to your Excellencies to recollect to notice my wishes on this subject to his Majesty. I shall

likewise introduce a request to this effect in my written address. With respect to the two New Mantchoos who accompany you, and who are such excellent archers, you will please to inform the Emperor, that I have seen, and been highly gratified with their performances. We, Tourgouths, are indeed strangers and foreigners; but still in our dress and general appearance we bear some little resemblance to the people of China. Now the Russians, on the contrary, are a people whose dress and whose language are totally distinct; there is no point of similitude. Your Excellencies will therefore do well to mark attentively, in the course of your return through the Russian territories, the peculiar character and appearance of the people of that nation, and report the same to your Emperor. Your Emperor will then undoubtedly in his wisdom provide and take measures accordingly. As to future communications by envoys through that country, it is to be feared, if too many persons are sent, that the Russians may take offence, and cut off the communication by that route entirely. I should then be deprived of the only way which remains open, of conveying my tributary offerings and respectful wishes to your sublime court. These remarks, your Excellencies will be pleased to remember to communicate, on my

behalf, to his Majesty. You will be pleased, lastly, to say, that I most respectfully wish his most excellent Majesty all manner of felicity; that I, a foreigner of a very far region, entertain the most unbounded gratitude for the vast favours his Majesty has been pleased to confer on me; that I wish an increase of thousands and ten thousands of years to the life of his Most Excellent Majesty."

On the 11th day of the moon, *A-yu-ke Khan*, his queen *Ta-eur-ma-pa-la*, his sons *Sha-ke-tu-eur cha-pu* and *Che-ling-tun-to-pa*, and his sister *To-eur-chee-la-pu-tan*, severally sent to each of us, (being eight persons,) a present of a horse: besides which, *A-yu-ke Khan* sent to us jointly a present of 76 horses and 400 dried bullocks' hides; and his son *Sha-ke-tu-eur-cha-pu* sent us also a separate present of 72 horses and 200 hides. Upon this we said—"In obedience to our Emperor's sacred commands, we have come to this country, and have delivered to your *Khan* his Majesty's imperial edict. Not only is your *Khan* rejoiced and pleased on this occasion, but we also are gratified beyond measure, far beyond what we could be by any gifts, however valuable. We are but travellers, and from a remote distance: the horses which we shall want for our journey from hence, your nation

will doubtless provide for us; and those we shall require after we enter the Russian territories, the *Cha-han Khan* will supply. For these horses, therefore, as well as for the skins, we have really no use or occasion: since, however, your *Khan*, out of gratitude for the great favours he has received from our Emperor, and in consideration of our being remote strangers, has chosen to make us these presents, we are apprehensive that if we were to refuse them entirely, he might take it amiss: we will therefore accept each of us a horse for our own riding, but beg to return to him, with our thanks, the rest of the horses and all the skins. There will be no objection, also, to our informing his Imperial Majesty, on our return, of the presents which the *Khan* had been pleased to intend for us."

The messengers who were charged with the delivery of the presents having reported to *A-yu-ke Khan* our reply, he immediately sent them back to us with fresh solicitations. They said, "Your Emperor does not look upon our *Khan* with disdain, since he has sent your Excellencies hither upon so distant a journey. Our country indeed produces nothing choice or valuable; but these horses and these skins are some small testimony of our respectful sentiments. Although your Excellencies have no

immediate use for them, you may perhaps be able to exchange or dispose of them upon your route, towards the discharge of your travelling expenses. Once more, therefore, you are intreated to accept of the whole." We replied—"Whenever presents of this kind are received, the customs of our empire of China will by no means allow of their being afterwards exchanged with other articles, or disposed of for money: but when we accept of one or two things, it is just the same as if we had accepted the whole." At last we agreed to accept each a horse from *A-yu-keKhan, Ta-la-ma-pu-la, Sha-ke-too-eur-cha-pu, Che-ling-tun-to-pa*, and *To-eur-che-la-pu-tan.*

The next day, *A-yu-ke Khan* sent a present of a horse each to *Ko-tcha-eur-too* and *Mee-kieu*, in consideration of their excellent performances in archery; and these presents they accepted accordingly. At the same time, *Cha-han-sa-mu*, the wife of *Sha-ke-too-eur-cha-pu* and daughter of *To-eur-chee-la-pu-tan*, made each of us a present of a horse; and said—"My father *Go-ke-eur Tu-tche-tchin Khan*, when he was alive, received great favours, and was noticed with kindred affection by your most excellent Emperor. Afterwards your Emperor had the great goodness to send special messengers to enquire concerning the health of my

mother *To-eur-chee La-pu-tan.* A second time, also, my mother experienced your Emperor's kindness and favour. I have lately witnessed myself the special favour shown by your Emperor to my uncle *A-yu-ke Khan* in the affair of *O-la-pu-tchu-eur.* Although I am impressed with the deepest gratitude for all these instances of favour and kindness to my family; yet now that your Excellencies are arrived here, I have nothing to offer you. I have sent you only a horse each, which is a present of little value, but will serve to testify to you my good intentions. I trust, therefore, that holding in remembrance the kindred affection and goodness shown by your Emperor formerly to my late father, you will not disdain to accept of my present, and that you will moreover be pleased to report what I have said to you on the occasion, to his Imperial Majesty."

Upon this we agreed, after deliberation, that the above presents should be accepted. These presents, however, as well as all the former presents of horses which we had accepted, we distributed, immediately on our return to Saratof, among the Russian interpreters and the soldiers of our escort. The last visit we received, was from *Che-ling-tun-to-pu,* the younger son of *A-yu-ke Khan.* He said—" Though I am a

mere youth and stripling, I beg also, on my part, to offer my respectful wishes for your excellent Emperor's felicity. I wish, at the same time, humbly to present to his Majesty a fowling-piece, and have accordingly given it in charge to our messenger for the purpose. I have no words in which I can suitably address your Emperor; but I sincerely wish your heavenly Emperor may reign over the world thousands and ten thousands of years; and morning and evening I have stood before *Fo*, offering up my fervent prayers for his welfare. I beg of your Excellencies to communicate this for me to his Majesty."

On the 14th day of the 6th moon, we set out upon our return. *Ta-yen*, a *Tai-ki** of *A-yu-ke Khan*, and the *Sai-sang Ur-chuy-too*, were appointed to escort us with their troops until we had crossed the Volga; and having so done, they took their leave.

At the latter end of the 7th moon, we reached the town of Cazan.

At this season of the year, the golden winds played softly upon the luxuriant verdure. The trees had not yet lost their foliage. The hills

* *Tai-ki* appears to be a title given to subordinate chiefs; and *Sai-sang* to commanders of divisions.

encompassing our route displayed the various tints of azure, yellow, and red. The surface of the ground sparkled with icicles. Rosy and brilliant skies illuminated the forests. The whole scene seemed to our eyes like a piece of beautiful painting.

CHAPTER XII.

Some Account of the Country of the Tourgouths—Arrival of the Envoys at Tobolsky—Interviews and Conferences with the Governor General of Siberia—Return from Tobolsky to the Chinese Frontier, by the way of Tara, Tomsky, and Elimsky—Description of those Places, and some Account of the Tartar Tribes in the Vicinity of Tomsky.

THE country which is now occupied by the Tourgouth tribes subject to *A-yu-ke Khan*, lies to the S. E. of the Russian frontier town of Saratof. It is wholly waste and uncultivated. It is bounded to the northward and to the westward by the river Volga, otherwise called the Etchill. To the eastward it is bounded by the *Tsay-ho* (river Jaik,) and to the southward by the lake *Teng-hee-se.** Both the Volga and the Jaik run in a southerly direction, until they ultimately discharge their waters into the Caspian. The banks of the Volga are wooded with the *cha* and the *yang-wha*, and with willows in abundance. Between Saratof and the head-quarters of *A-yu-ke*

* The Caspian Sea is evidently understood in this place, though it seems to be confounded by the Chinese author with Lake Tenghis of our maps.

Khan, upon the banks of the lake *Manuto*, are two considerable streams called *San-to Ta-eur-loo*, and *San-to Hou-pan*, and two other smaller streams, called *Ta-eur-wen* and *Vu-lu-su-tan*. All these streams run westward, and discharge themselves into the Volga. In the marshes about the banks of these streams are found the white and yellow water-lily, and reeds and rushes of various kinds. On the western bank of the Volga, between Saratof and the Caspian, the Russians possess some fortified stations, the names of which are *Si-la-ke-mo-she*, *Tcha-li-tse* (Czaritia of Bell. vol. i. 38.) *Ko-la-se-no-yo-eur*, *Cho-eur-na-ya-eur*, (Tsorno Yarr of Bell,) and *O-se-ta-eur-han* (Astrachan). To the S. W. of the lake *Manuto*, and of these fortified stations, is a long range of hills; and about an hundred *lee* further westward, lies the country of the *Ho-pang* (Cuban Tartars) otherwise called Mang-vu-te, a nation subject to *Kung-ke-eur Khan*, king of the *Tu-li-ye-se-ko*, (Turks). This people are constantly in the practice of coming across the boundary, in order to attack and plunder their Russian and Tourgouth neighbours. Upon making enquiry respecting the extent of the region which the subjects of *A-yu-ke Khan* at present occupy, we were told that it extended about 30 days' journey from east to west, and about 20 days' journey

from north to south. Snakes and tortoises are found here; the snakes are of the colour and appearance of black varnish.

On the 7th day of the 11th moon, we reached Tobolsky, where we remained some time awaiting the return of the Governor General *Ko-ko-lin*, who happened to be absent on a visit to Moscow.

On the 5th of the 12th moon, *Ko-ko-lin* returned to Tobolsky, and on the 7th of the moon he sent to us the Russian officer *La-li-vun Va-she-li-yu-che*, to invite us to a conference. We waited upon him accordingly. After the first salutations were over, he began his enquiries by saying—"Have your Excellencies, in the course of your laborious journey, been regularly supplied with horses and every thing else you have required? Has there been no deficiency? Your Excellencies probably never performed before so long a journey?"

We replied—"Every thing we have required on our journey has been regularly supplied us. There has been no deficiency; nor have we suffered any great fatigue. Our whole route, after we left Irkutsky last year, was through vast forests, and among ranges of lofty mountains. but we were enabled, notwithstanding, to pro-

ceed by water in our barges as far as Epantshin. From thence we were indeed obliged to continue our journey by land; and, as the road lay through forests, it was somewhat difficult and dangerous: we had also many swamps and deep morasses to pass over, such as we had never before seen, or even heard of, in our empire of China. The regions which have hitherto been visited by the people of the Chinese empire, are those which extend from China to the southward as far as the Southern Sea, to the eastward as far as the Eastern Sea, and to the westward as far as the western extreme of the *See-tsang* (Thibet) country, where it borders upon the territories of the **Sha-chang-khan* (King of Persia). These latter, the people of China have never yet visited. To the northward of China, lies your empire of Russia; and that empire has now, for the first time, been visited by us. We have no places in our Chinese empire which at all resemble it."

Ko-ko-lin then said—"After your Excellencies had arrived at Saratof, why did you remain there so long? Why did you not proceed at

* *Sha-chang* is probably a corruption of Shach-Hussein; which, according to Bell, vol. i. p. 126, was the name of the King of Persia then reigning.

once to the residence of *A-yu-ke Khan?* I wish also to hear how long you remained at *A-yu-ke Khan*'s residence."

We replied—"*A-yu-ke Khan* was, at the time of our arrival, residing in the vicinity of *O-se-ta-eur-han* (Astrachan). It was our wish to have proceeded thither immediately, but the snow being then very deep, it was difficult to travel; besides which, the messengers who were expected at Saratof from *A-yu-ke Khan* had not arrived. We remained there accordingly till the spring of the year. In the mean while *A-yu-ke Khan* removed his head-quarters to the banks of the lake *Manuto*, and dispatched to us his messengers from thence. Upon their having arrived, we set out to meet him, and we remained with him fourteen days."

Ko-ko-lin said—"I have lately been at *San-pi-ti-li-pu-eur* (St. Petersburg), and have had an interview there with the *Cha-han Khan*. The district of St. Petersburg belonged formerly to the kingdom of Sweden; but my sovereign, the *Cha-han Khan*, having invaded and conquered it, has built and fortified a city there, which, after the *Khan*'s name, is now called St. Petersburg. This city is laid out on a plan exceeding in extent the city of Moscow, and the *Khan* has now made it his established residence. This year

the *Khan* has fought another campaign with the kingdom of Sweden, and has taken from the Swedes 21 ships, 1 general officer, and 800 soldiers. Just now the French and the other nations have joined the Swedes, and are assisting them in the defence of their towns and cities. The soldiers of these nations are all warlike and obedient to a strict discipline, so that when they march into action they always fight desperately, and never harbour a thought of retreating. But it is otherwise with the soldiers of the Tourgouths; they are lawless and disorderly. When they are brought into action they readily draw their bows and fire their guns, if the enemy is at a distance; but if the enemy is near them, they think of nothing but running away. There is no vigour or steadiness in their operations. If by chance they are at any time victorious, the only object they aim at is plunder. Ten years ago, our *Khan* engaged the services of 10,000 of the Tourgouth troops, and attached them to his army; but, although he opposed 3000 of them to a party of no more than 300 Swedes, they were unable to gain the victory.* Formerly we were engaged in hostilities against *Kung-ke-eur* the *Khan*

* This by no means corresponds with Bell's account of the Tourgouth troops already quoted.

of *Tu-li-ye-se-ko* (Turkey), and we took from him the city of *O-tsao* (Asoph); but lately. we have sent a pacific embassy to *Kung-ke-eur Khan*, and having established peace and amity with him, have restored to him his city of Asoph. The whole of the country, however, to the northward and eastward of that city, is ceded to us in perpetuity."

After making these observations, *Ko-ko-lin* asked us what arms and ammunition the Emperor of China made use of in his military expeditions; and whether we were particularly acquainted with them?

We replied—"In our empire of China we make use of great guns, as well as smaller firearms of various kinds. Bows and arrows, swords, spears, and many other such weapons, are likewise employed by us in warfare. As soon as the enemy are within the range of our shot, we fire at them with great guns; when they are nearer to us we shoot at them with bows and arrows, and musketry; and when, lastly, we engage them in close action, we fight with our swords and spears. Every one is required to make it his first concern to gain the victory. Whenever there is the least cowardice or backwardness, the offenders are put to death upon the spot, and their heads exhibited for a public example. Our laws by no

means suffer the bodies of those who fall in battle to be lost or neglected. Whenever the responsible persons are guilty of such neglect, they are punished. Indeed, our military laws are strict and severe in the utmost degree."

Ko-ko-lin observed—"We Russians used also formerly to fight with bows and arrows; but ever since the accession of the present *Khan*, which is now above twenty years ago, we have laid those weapons aside entirely."

We then addressed *Ko-ko-lin*, and said—"We would wish to know what is at present the age of your *Khan*, and how many years he has reigned? Also, how many *Khans* have reigned altogether in your country, and for how long a period?"

He replied—"Our *Khan* is now 41 years of age, and he has reigned 28 years. Anciently, we had not the title of *Khan* in our country. The first of our sovereigns who assumed to himself the title of *Khan* was *Yee-fan Va-she-le-yu-che* (John Basilovich). Since his time twenty-three *Khans* have reigned, during a period of somewhat more than 350 years. It was in the reign of our thirteenth *Khan*, and about 160 years ago, that this empire was extended by the several conquests of Cazan, Tobolsky, Astrachan, and other districts in their vicinity."

We proceeded to say to *Ko-ko-lin*—"The purpose of our mission being now completely accomplished, we are desirous of sending forward messengers with the intelligence, to his Imperial Majesty. We have already expressed repeatedly our wishes on that subject to our conductor *Po-eur-ko-ni*, both upon our arrival at Saratof, and afterwards at Cazan and at Klinof; but he said, in reply, that the sending forward messengers upon this occasion, was an affair of importance, and one which he could not presume to take upon himself, but that the Governor General would doubtless arrange it upon our arrival at Tobolsky. It has thus been out of our power as yet to dispatch any messengers; but as you, who are the Governor General, are here present, we now hope to be able to dispatch our messengers to his Imperial Majesty without any further delay."

Ko-ko-lin said—"By all means; it is highly proper you should address his Imperial Majesty on this occasion, and your messenger shall proceed without delay. Already our *Cha-han-Khan* has issued his orders that your Excellencies should be escorted on your return to China with all practicable expedition. Our Great Council of State has likewise transmitted to me

instructions to the same effect. How then can we presume in any way to delay or detain you?"

On the 17th, *Ko-ko-lin* sent the Russian officer *La-li-ven Va-she-li-yu-che* to invite me (*Tu-li-shin*), and *Na-yen*, to another conference. We waited upon him accordingly; and *Ko-ko-lin* began by saying—"At the time that your Excellencies first did me the honour to visit my government, I fear we may not have adequately expressed to you our respectful sentiments, or have been sufficiently attentive to your suitable accommodation and entertainment; but I rely on your Excellencies' liberality in interpreting every thing favourably. From the most remote times to the present, none of the natives of China ever before visited this country. Now that we have the good fortune to see your Excellencies here, it is gratifying to us in the highest degree."

We replied—"In the whole course of our journey, both going and returning, our accommodation and supplies have been provided us without a single omission or irregularity. Your officers and soldiers have all been extremely respectful and attentive. We have experienced no fatigues or difficulties; through the superintending care of your Supreme Government, every thing regarding us has been conducted in the

most satisfactory manner. Formerly we were acquainted with the Russian empire by report only; we had never visited it. But now, in execution of his Imperial Majesty's commands, we have had occasion to pass through your country, and to meet you at this place, a circumstance which has been extremely pleasing to us."

Ko-ko-lin proceeded to observe—" When I last saw our *Khan*, he enquired particularly concerning your Excellencies. Upon this, I took occasion to apprize him of your Excellencies wise and judicious conduct; and I noticed especially to him your intimation to me that you would be willing to proceed without delay to meet him, in the event of his being desirous to see you. He then asked me whether any dispatches had arrived from the Great Council? I replied, that none had yet been received. On this he observed, that he was at present engaged in military operations, and had consequently removed to the head-quarters of his army upon the Swedish frontier. Nevertheless he wished much to see your Excellencies; but finding that no communications had been received from the Great Council, he could not, he said, presume to trouble your Excellencies to come at present to a conference. Notwithstanding, however, the

remote distance of his present quarters, he said, he certainly should have invited your Excellencies to meet him, had there been any such official communication, or any business of importance to be transacted."

Ko-ko-lin further observed to us—"I propose to appoint an officer and guard to accompany and protect your Excellencies the whole of the way from hence to your imperial court. I should suppose they will be allowed to proceed according to this arrangement, and that they will meet with no interruption or detention in passing the frontiers. The dispatches of the Great Council I have already delivered to an officer, who has been sent off, with a guard, to convey them to their destination; and I have given the officer instructions to await the arrival of the second escort, in order that the whole might return afterwards together. With regard to the horses and other supplies which your Excellencies will have occasion for upon your journey, I have issued orders and made arrangements, that every thing may be in readiness for you, and that none of my officers may presume to be guilty of any remissness in their attendance."

On the 22d of the 12th moon, our post-horses and letters being in readiness, and the officers and soldiers of our appointed escort in attend-

ance, *Na-yen* and I, accompanied each by two servants, finally quitted Tobolsky. On the 7th day of our journey, being the 29th of the 12th moon, we reached *Ta-la-se-ko*. (Tara. Bell, vol. i. p. 241.)

TARA.

TARA lies to the S. E. of Tobolsky, at the distance of about 1200 *lee*. The river Irtish runs from the S. E. to the N.W. Near the town of Tara, the river *Ta-la* (Tara,) which likewise takes its rise to the S. E. forms a junction with the Irtish. The banks of the Irtish are level and well wooded. The trees are firs of different kinds, poplars, willows, and the *yng-gao*. The inhabitants of the country about this river are all Tartars, and the land is here and there cultivated. The town is upon the south bank, and contains a mixed population of Russians and Tartars, to the extent of about a thousand families. There are here six Christian churches. The governor of the district resides here, and has 500 soldiers under his command.

On the 12th of the 1st moon of the 54th year of *Kang-hee*, (12th Feb. 1715,) we quitted Tara, and on the 14th day of our journey from thence, reached Tomsky *(To-mo-se-ko)*. The country

upon our route appeared to be inhabited only by the Tartars who have submitted to the Russian yoke, and a wild people called *Pa-eur-pa-te.* (The Barabinsky of Bell, vol. i. p. 248). Near here the Russian territories border upon those of the *Ho-sa-ke* (Cossacks), those of the *Ho-la-ho-eur-pa,* and those of the subjects of *Tse-vang-la-pu-tan.** The inhabitants are very few. Their drink is melted snow.

TOMSKY.

Tomsky lies to the S.E. of Tara, at a distance of about 2500 *lee.* The river Oby takes its rise in the S.E., and, after approaching Tomsky within a distance of about 200 *lee,* continues its course north-westward. The name of Oby has been given to this river by the Russians, but by the Barabinsky it is called the river *Ya-pa-lee.* The river *To-mu* (Tomm) likewise rises in the S.E. After passing on the west side of the town of Tomsky, it runs N.W. about a hundred *lee,* and finally discharges itself into the Oby. The first 200 *lee* of the route from Tara was through forest lands. The trees were firs, willows, the *yu,* and *yng-gao.* Here the

* The Kontaysha, Prince of the Kalmucks, mentioned by Bell, vol. i. p. 234. See also note, p. 9, of this Narrative.

population is entirely Russian, and the country is in some places cultivated. The remainder of the route, as far as the banks of the Oby, lay across extensive level plains (steppes,) with no trees on them, except a very few scattered clumps of the *wha*. Upon these plains, the spots of marshy ground, grown over with reeds and rushes, were very frequent; and there were also some ponds or lakes, but no running streams. In the neighbourhood of these lakes are the scattered habitations of the Tartars and the Barabinsky. In the summer and autumn they drink the water of the lakes, or what overflows from the marshes. The ice and snow-water furnishes them with drink in the winter and spring. In this part of the country, four nations, namely, the Russian, the *Ho-sa-ke* (Cossack), the *Ho-la-ho-eur-pa*, and that governed by *Tse-vang-la-pu-tan*, border on each other. The Tartar and Barabinsky tribes, who inhabit the country, are obliged to pay tribute both to the Russians and to *Tse-vang-la-pu-tan;* and they are besides often invaded and plundered by their neighbours the Cossacks.

From the banks of the Oby to Tomsky, the route is again through forest lands. The trees are the same as already mentioned. The country is inhabited by a mixed population of Tartars and Russians, and is here and there cultivated.

The town is situated upon the east bank of the river Tomm, and contains above a thousand resident families.

Besides the Russians and the Tartars, there are here some families of Kirghis *(Ke-eur-ki-se,) Ho-tung*, and Eleuths *(Ge-lu-te)*. The country to the left of Tomsky is well cultivated to a considerable extent. There are here ten Christian churches, a resident governor, and a garrison of 500 soldiers.

After proceeding from Tomsky north-eastward about 1600 *lee*, we arrived at Yeniseik. The river *Tsu-le-mo* (Tsulimm), (which we crossed in our route from Tomsky,) has its source in the mountains of *Ma-ko-fo-se-ko*, and takes a south-westerly course till it meets with and falls into the Oby. Its banks are thickly wooded. The trees are firs, willows, poplars, *ko-sung*, *yng-gao*, and *la-moey*. Within the distance of 100 *lee* from Tomsky the land is in part cultivated, and there are four or five Russian villages. The inhabitants of the woods on the banks of the Tsulimm, are all Tartars. They are very thinly scattered, and occupied in the pursuit of the *yn-shoo*, *whey-shoo*, and foxes, with the skins of which animals they discharge their tribute. Within 200 *lee* of Yeniseik, the country is woody

and very mountainous. In this district there are six or seven Russian villages, and some of the land is cultivated.

We reached Yeniseik on the fifteenth day's journey from Tomsky; and we remained there two days, while the post-horses, and the requisite supplies for continuing our journey, were getting ready. On the 4th day of the 2d moon, we again proceeded upon our route, and on the tenth day, after leaving Yeniseik, we arrived at the town of *E-li-mo* (Elimsky).

ELIMSKY.

This town lies to the S. E. of Yeniseik, at a distance of above 2000 *lee*. The country on all sides is mountainous, and covered with wood. This part of the route may be performed either by land-carriage or in barges upon the river *Tung-koo-see* (Tungusta). The town of Elimsky is perfectly similar to the other Russian stations in this country. It is surrounded with hills thickly wooded with the *san*, *sung*, *ma-we-sung*, *yang-wha*, *tsung-lieou*, and *yng-gao*, (firs, poplars, willows, &c.) The river *E-li-mo* (Elimm), rises in the N. E., and, after it passes Elimsky, falls into the Tongusta. The town is situated upon its northern bank. It contains about 200 Rus-

sian families. There are here two Christian churches, a resident governor, and a garrison of 500 men.

From Elimsky to Irkutsky, the route is south-easterly; the distance above 1000 *lee*. The country is woody and mountainous as before. Here, likewise, the route may be performed either by land-carriage, or upon the river *Gang-ko-la* (Angara) in barges.*

* The continuation of the route from Irkutsky to Pekin, has already been given in the early part of the Narrative.

CHAPTER XIII.

Envoys receive Audience from the Emperor on their return to Pekin—their conduct approved—Official Report of their Proceedings—His Imperial Majesty's Reply.

On the 27th of the 5th moon of the 54th year of *Kang-hee*, we arrived at the imperial court, and proceeded immediately to the imperial villa of *Chang-Chung-Yuen*, where we had an audience of the Emperor, and the honour of reporting personally to his Majesty the transactions and result of our mission. His Majesty received the report with much satisfaction, and was graciously pleased to approve of our conduct. A gracious and commendatory edict was soon after issued; and the honour was also awarded us of an imperial repast.

Our written report of our proceedings was as follows:

"On the 22d day of the 5th moon of the 51st year of *Kang-hee*, we set out from the imperial court, in execution of the service entrusted to us by the command of his Majesty. On the 23d

of the 7th moon we reached Selinginsky, the frontier station of the Russian dominions. The Russian governor *Yee-fan Sa-fi-tchee*, as soon as he had heard that the heavenly messengers of an imperial embassy had arrived at the frontiers, from his most excellent Majesty the Emperor of China, immediately appointed us a guard of officers and soldiers, and sent us proper vessels for our conveyance to the town of Selinginsky. Upon our approach, several companies of soldiers were drawn out in honour of the imperial edict, and they afterwards escorted us to the residence which was allotted for our accommodation. The Russian governor said—"Our two empires have long been in peace and amity with each other. The people of my country have often visited your Chinese empire, and have always been received with favour and kindness on such occasions by your most excellent Emperor. Now, therefore, as your Excellencies have been sent hither in the capacity of heavenly messengers, it is undoubtedly proper that you should be promptly escorted on your journey agreeably to your destination. But, although dispatches have been sent to announce your Excellencies' arrival to the *Khan* my sovereign, his answer has not yet been received, wherefore it would be difficult for you to proceed upon your route just at pre-

sent, and I must accordingly request you to remain awhile at this place."

We consequently waited at Selinginsky for the *Khan's* answer.

On the 14th of the 1st moon of the 52d year of *Kang-hee*, the answer of the *Cha-han-khan* was received at Irkutsky, and a Russian officer named *Wen-to-lee O-fán-na-fi-tchee* was in consequence dispatched from thence to Selinginsky to wait on us. In reply to our enquiry relative to the purport of his visit, he said—"The governor, my commanding officer, has sent me hither with instructions to pay every attention in my power to the accommodation of the most excellent Emperor's heavenly messengers: but with respect to the letter lately received from the *Khan*, I have not seen it, and cannot tell what it contains."

On the 15th day of the same moon, we quitted Selinginsky; and, on the 25th, after a journey of 10 days, we reached Irkutsky. *Fee-to-eur Yee-fan-na-tchee*, the governor, received us with his troops drawn out in military array, flags displayed, drums beating, and cannon and muskets firing. We were desirous of proceeding on our journey the same day; but *Fee-to-eur Yee-fan-na-tchee* said—"My instructions merely authorize me to receive and accommodate your

Excellencies at this place; but when the officer arrives, who is expected here from Tobolsky to meet you, you will be enabled to continue your route."

On the 20th of the 2d moon, *Po-eur-ko-ni T'se-pan Na-fi-tchee,* the officer who had been expected from Tobolsky, arrived; upon which, we immediately expressed to him our desire of proceeding without loss of time, but he said—"The roads are at present so broken and dangerous, as to be almost impassable, and the necessary relays of horses cannot be obtained, as the country is almost destitute of inhabitants. My master, the Governor General, has therefore ordered, that their Excellencies the heavenly messengers should be conducted by water." We accordingly waited at Irkutsky until the ice was broken up, and the river Angara navigable.

On the 4th of the 5th moon, we left Irkutsky; and having continued our journey for three moons successively, we arrived, on the 4th of the 7th moon, at the town of Tobolsky. Here *Ko-ko-lin Ma-ti-fee Fee-to-lee-yu-che,* the Governor General, drew out several companies of soldiers in honour of the Imperial Edict, and likewise appointed an officer and a guard to conduct us to our residence.

Upon our meeting the Governor General *Ko-*

ko-lin, he took us by the hand, and respectfully wished the utmost prosperity and peace to our most excellent Emperor. After the first salutations were over, he observed, "Since the period of the definitive establishment of peace and amity between our two empires, the people of my country have often experienced the great goodness and favours of your Emperor; they hold it in grateful remembrance."

Our treatment and reception was extremely respectful and attentive throughout. At the different towns and stations along the route, the commanding officers constantly came out to receive us, with their troops drawn out in array, their flags displayed, their drums beating, and their cannon and musketry saluting. The gentry, also, and the elders residing at these places, came out to visit us, and offered us presents of eatables, all expressing with one accord their high admiration of our most excellent Emperor's kindness and great virtues. Thus, (we humbly reflected,) although these Russian dominions are the unfrequented and desert regions of the North-west; although, from the most ancient times to the present, they have had no intercourse with our Chinese empire, though they are not even mentioned in our histories, nor have ever before this time been visited by a

single native of China; yet, even here, as in all other quarters, the god-like majesty of our Emperor's excellent virtues has been made manifest; all the ten thousand kingdoms of the world participate in the protecting care of his beneficent government.

Russia is only now beginning to open an intercourse with China; but as long as forty or fifty years ago, when the boundaries of the two empires were yet unsettled, even then, the many excellent virtues of our empire were well known to them by report. Their benign influence had already begun to produce among the Russians a disposition towards improvement.

The Governor General *Ko-ko-lin*, after having given us these proofs of his regard and consideration, issued his orders for the equipment of the requisite number of boats, and appointed an additional number of officers and soldiers, with instructions to escort us to the residence of *A-yuke Khan* as expeditiously as possible; and they were further directed to conduct us back from thence on our return, with the same attentions and civilities.

On the 12th of the 7th moon, we set out from Tobolsky, and after travelling for four moons successively, we reached, on the 16th day of the 11th moon, the frontier town of Saratof,

which stands immediately on the confines of the Russian and Tourgouth territories. Here, on account of the heavy snows, we were detained some time.

On the 5th day of the 4th moon of the 53d year, *A-yu-ke*, the *Khan* of the Tourgouths, sent us his *Tai-ki Wey-ching*, and others, to wait on us at our residence at Saratof. On the 16th of the 5th moon, we crossed the river Volga, and on the 20th of the same, we commenced our journey. As we proceeded through the different stations of the Tourgouths, *A-yu-ke Khan*'s priests and *tai-kis* (chief officers), and the leaders of the *Man-gou-te* tribes who are subject to him, came out to meet us, with their followers and their cattle. They spread out entertainments before us; and some of them, kneeling at our horses' heads, presented us with various kinds of eatables, testifying towards us, in all things, the utmost respect and consideration. On the 1st of the 6th moon, after a journey of ten days, we arrived at the head-quarters of *A-yu-ke Khan*, upon the banks of the lake *Ma-nu-to*.

Here we were met by the *tai-kis*, the priests, and the *say-sangs*, who had been sent out by *A-yu-ke Khan* to receive and conduct us to our appointed residence. In the afternoon of the same day, *A-yu-ke Khan* sent to us the priest *Ko-va*, and

other persons, to inform us that on the morrow, it being a fortunate day, he proposed receiving his Imperial Majesty's Edict. Accordingly, we set out the next day from our residence, and took with us the Imperial Edict; the priests and *tai-kis* of the Tourgouths leading the way, and the officers and soldiers of our Russian escort closing the procession. When we reached *A-yu-ke Khan*'s tent of ceremony, we dismounted from our horses, and advancing, presented the Imperial Edict. *A-yu-ke Khan* received it kneeling, and at the same time pronounced his respectful wishes for the peace and prosperity of the Emperor of the eastern world. This ceremony being over, the music played, and an entertainment was served. Salutes of cannon were also fired by the Tourgouth attendants and by the Russian escort, in honour of the occasion.

Thus, (we reflected,) are the effects of the imperial virtues diffused throughout Heaven and earth. They are resplendent as the sun and the moon. The remotest corners of the sea, and the deepest recesses of the mountains, join in grateful homage to the seat of imperial repose. The most remote and the most secluded, all participate in the enjoyment of the perfect tranquillity and happiness which it has established. It (the imperial sovereignty of China) re-establishes the fallen, and re-

unites the broken-asunder. It is the comforter of the afflicted, and the guardian of those who are in danger. In all these ways it befriends the remote foreigner, and displays the excellence and vastness of its bounty. *A-yu-ke*, the *Khan* of the Tourgouths, excited to admiration by the fame of such goodness, hastened to evince his zeal and respect by sending an envoy to our court with tributary offerings. In return, his Imperial Majesty, whose gracious beneficence extends far and wide, like refreshing showers upon the land, was pleased to depute us on this occasion to deliver to *A-yu-ke Khan* an Imperial Edict, and various presents.

The joy and gratitude of *A-yu-ke Khan* were increased by this event, beyond measure. He said—"I was born and educated in a foreign land. I have admired from afar your heavenly court, and the most excellent and most resplendent virtues of your Emperor; the contemplation of such sublime perfection made me wish to draw near, so as actually to behold the heavenly countenance, but it was not possible for me personally to have that satisfaction. I wished then, at least, to send envoys to the imperial court, in my stead; but the usual route was not at that time practicable. Grieved at this disappointment, I had no rest, sleeping or

waking, until lately, when, on having obtained from the *Cha-han Khan* the liberty of passing through his dominions, I was at length enabled to send an envoy to your court, charged with my respectful wishes, and a tributary offering of some of the trifling products of my country.

" Now your most excellent Emperor disdains not again to confer on me additional favours, and the exalted honour of his gracious and condescending notice. Regardless of the great length of the journey through the Russian territories, his Majesty has been pleased to depute your Excellencies to this country with instructions to deliver to me his imperial commands. He has thus conferred new lustre and dignity on my kingdom: the mountains and the vallies, as well as all living things, seem to partake of the universal joy. The inmost recesses of our souls are affected. Truly, I am most happy in having had this communication with the Chinese empire, and having received these gracious favours from your heaven-like Emperor. They are high as the mountains, deep as the seas, vast as the heavens, capacious as the whole earth. I can only say farther, that I wish your most excellent Emperor thousands and thousands of years, that I venerate his virtues, and that I pray, without ceasing, for his prosperity."

A-yu-ke Khan made us no other communication. We remained fourteen days at his head-quarters, in the course of which we were invited to four entertainments, and complimented with sundry presents of horses. On the 14th of the 6th moon, we set out upon our return.

These events lead us again to the humble contemplation of the virtues of his Majesty. They indeed unite all the excellencies of heaven and earth. They are founded on the principles of universal charity and benevolence. Their fame is constantly spreading and augmenting. The most remote, as well as the nearest nations, now enjoy the benefit of the imperial instructions. They have at length reached those extremities of the earth which, for thousands and thousands of years, had been previously inaccessible to the voice of the teacher. They have touched and subdued the hearts of men, in the most remote places, where the imperial laws and statutes, from the most ancient times to the present, had never before been known to possess any influence. Thus gloriously are the sacred footsteps manifested; the map of the empire is thus further extended; the imperial goodness diffuses its influence more and more; all unite in honouring and respecting it. The four seas, and the six divisions of the world, emulate the interior in their respect

for the imperial power, and love for the imperial goodness. There are none among the nations who do not now scale the mountains, and embark upon the seas, in order to have an opportunity of paying homage in the Crimson Chamber. All who exist, and are comprised in the circle of civilized society, make tributary offerings of such precious things as they possess, and vie with each other for the priority, in presenting their tribute. It is thus apparent, that the vastness of his Majesty's incomparable virtues far surpasses any thing which existed before in ancient times. The sacred works of his reign exceed in perfection those of an hundred kings. His administration is, accordingly, happy and successful, and his era prosperous and flourishing, beyond all example.

We, who have had the good fortune to be born at this peaceful epoch, have enjoyed, far beyond our deserts, his Majesty's favour, and have been especially entrusted with a mission to remote regions. In consequence of the awe and admiration which the perfection of our most excellent Emperor commands among all nations, we have been received, in the character of heavenly messengers from imperial China, with universal attention and respect. We have been exalted

to the highest pitch of honour and glory; our joy and satisfaction have been extreme.*

* The foregoing extravagant encomiums on the character of the Emperor *Kam-hi,* (or *Kang-hee,)* and the happiness of his reign, are no doubt conveyed in the highest and most inflated style of oriental amplification; but, when divested of these figures of speech, and reduced to more sober language, they will be found substantially true: and are confirmed, in fact, by every writer of the history of that period. The works of the Missionaries contain numerous anecdotes of the amiable qualities and enlightened judgment of this prince, and are full of accounts of the wisdom and vigour of his administration, and of the splendour of his conquests; but I prefer quoting the following short extract on this subject from Mr. Bell, who was present at this Emperor's court for some time, and whose good sense and impartiality render his work one of the highest authority, upon every point to which his means of information extended:

"*Kam-hi* hath yet the remains of a graceful person. His countenance is open, his disposition generous, and he gives great application to business; qualities absolutely necessary to manage the great affairs with which he is entrusted. His reign has been long and prosperous, though sometimes disturbed by dangerous insurrections, and open rebellions; but his good fortune, and prudent conduct, overcoming all difficulties, restored public tranquillity, and he has now, for a considerable time, enjoyed perfect peace and happiness. Although the government of China is absolute, it requires no small sagacity and skill to rule an empire of such extensive dominions, and containing so numerous subjects.

"After *Kam-hi* had settled his affairs at home, the first step he took was to gain the western or Mongall Tartars to his

This narrative of our proceedings we respectfully address to his Imperial Majesty; and we

friendship. The Chinese had no enemies so formidable. The Emperor knew their valour, and had employed many of them in his army, who did him signal services on many occasions. To effect this, he began to form alliances with their princes and chiefs, by inter-marriages between their families and his, where these could take place; others he allured by rich presents; so that they are, at present, little better than his subjects. And, by this master-piece of politics, he succeeded more effectually than if he had employed the whole force of China. The friendship of the western Tartars is of great importance to the Emperor; for they not only supply Pekin with provisions, the produce of their flocks, but, upon any emergency, can bring to his assistance 50,000 horse, on a short warning.

"It may easily be imagined, that great armies and strict discipline are necessary to guard so extensive territories, and keep such a numerous people to their duty. The number of soldiers, reported to be in the empire, is prodigious, and almost incredible. I am well informed that the single province and city of Pekin contain no less than 120,000 effective men, all well paid, clothed, and armed.

"Notwithstanding the vast revenues which are necessary for the support of the government, the duties on inland trade must be very easy; for I was told by a merchant, that he could live in the capital, and trade in what branches of business he pleased, for paying only one ounce of silver annually to the Emperor. Such easy taxes show the great economy and moderation of *Kam-hi*, whose reign is called the reign of great peace and rest; in Chinese, *Tay-ping*."—*Bell*, vol. ii. p. 97—99.

The age of *Kam-hi* may certainly be considered as the Augus-

subjoin a sketch of the hills and rivers passed upon our route, which has been humbly inscribed in a yellow volume, for the purpose of being submitted to his Majesty's inspection: finally, we

tan age of the Chinese. Chinese literature was never more fostered and encouraged than during his reign. Mantchoo Tartar literature may be said to owe its existence to his patronage; and he possessed, besides, the singular merit, for a Chinese monarch, of entertaining a very adequate notion of the value and importance of the discoveries of European science. As a statesman and warrior, the firm establishment of the new dynasty, and the reduction of a considerable part of Independent Tartary, rendered him equally eminent. His grandson, the late Emperor *Kien-lung*, though not possessed of a mind equally enlightened, emulated his example both as a statesman and a patron of literature; and the superior advantage he enjoyed of a tranquil and undisputed succession, enabled him, in the course of his long reign, to extend his dominion, direct or indirect, from the borders of Kamschatka nearly to the banks of the Caspian. But now the limits of this empire are again receding. Among its former tributaries, Cochinchina already claims entire independence; and Nepaul, having solicited in vain the accustomed protection of China, has been compelled to transfer its allegiance to, or at least to submit to the dictation of, another master. The neglect and decay of public works, and the ill-suppressed voice of discontent, seem also to attest the declension of the empire in the interior in an equal degree; at least a change for the worse was fully apparent in the general state of most of the places which happened to be visited by both the British embassies of 1793 and 1816.

request his Majesty's further orders." His Majesty's orders were as follows—" We understand your address, and have referred it to the proper tribunal. Your map we retain for further examination."

CHAPTER XIV.

Tu-li-shin, *on his return, finds his Father and Family in health—he attends the Emperor to* Je-ho, *in Tartary—is sent on another Mission to the Russian Frontier, in order to announce the re-commencement of Hostilities between the Emperor and the Prince of the Kalmucs—arrives at Selinginsky, and dispatches from thence a Letter to the Governor General of Siberia.*

At the period of my departure on my public mission,* my father had already attained his 69th year; but, upon my return to the capital, after three years' absence, I had the happiness, through the protection of Heaven, of again seeing him and all my family, flourishing and collected around me.

Filled with gratitude to my imperial master for his Majesty's great and repeated favours, I solicited his Majesty, in the course of the summer, about the beginning of the 4th moon, to permit me to follow the imperial car, and attend on service at the summer retreat of *Je-ho.*

* Here *Tu-li-shin* takes up the narrative individually.

Subsequently, upon the occasion of hostilities being commenced against the wicked and rebellious *Tse-vang La-pu-tan*, the officers of the Supreme Tribunal for Military Affairs were pleased to overlook my incapacity and unworthiness, and to recommend me as a fit person to fill the vacant station of an Assessor at the Military Board. In the course of the discharge of my duty in the military department, I was several times admitted to the palace, and to a personal audience of his Majesty. I was honoured by the expression of his Majesty's gracious approbation and favour far beyond my rank or deserts. I was, moreover, again deputed on a mission to the frontiers of Russia. During the summer, in the course of the 6th moon, his Majesty's troops having taken the field for the destruction of the rebels in all directions, I received orders to make known his Majesty's pleasure on this affair, to the Russian nation, and accordingly proceeded under the imperial authority, to the frontiers, to execute this commission. On my arrival at Selinginsky, I addressed a letter to the Governor General *Ko-ko-lin Mati-fi*, to the following effect:

"*Tu-li-shin*, an Honorary Assistant of the Interior Council, and Envoy of his Most Excellent Majesty the Emperor of China, writes to *Ko-ko-*

lin Ma-ti-fi Fi-to-eur-yu-che, the Governor General of Siberia.

"Since we parted, I have been in health. When the great and excellent Emperor deputed me to proceed upon a mission to the residence of *A-yu-ke,* the *Khan* of the Tourgouths, I spent, upon that occasion, more than two years in passing through your Russian territories. Upon the route I always received the most liberal and abundant supplies. All the horses, barges, and carriages which I required, were furnished me without the least omission or irregularity. When I arrived at Tobolsky, you received and entertained me with the greatest respect and consideration. The (national) flags were displayed, and the soldiers drawn out in array, in compliment to me. I was invited to feasts, and experienced every other kind of hospitality. In like manner, in all the other towns and stations through which I passed, the commanding officers came out with their soldiers to meet me, and were in all things extremely attentive and respectful. You moreover sent an officer with a guard of soldiers to escort me the whole of the way to the residence of *A-yu-ke Khan,* and, upon my return, you specially appointed *Yee-fan Sa-fi-tchee,* with another guard, to escort me to the imperial court.

"In my report to my most excellent Emperor since my return to court, I did not omit fully to state to his Majesty your respectful attentions, your zealous services, your ample ceremonials, and all your other admirable proceedings; and I further remarked, that your nation was very opposite in character to that of the Eleuths; that it was observant of laws and institutions; and just and sincere in its dealings.

"My most excellent Emperor expressed his approbation and high satisfaction at this account, and has issued special orders to the Tribunal for Foreign Affairs (*Lee-fan-yuen*), directing that the lately arrived *Yee-fan Sa-fi-tchee*, and the soldiers accompanying him, should be abundantly supplied with every thing requisite; and his Majesty has been pleased to make them besides particular presents. *Yee-fan Sa-fi-tchee* and his people are all in good health; you need, therefore, be under no anxiety respecting them. They shall be duly accommodated and sent back to their country.

"At present I am again employed upon the public service, on a mission to your frontiers. It is now already a twelvemonth since our meeting, but you have always remained deeply impressed on my remembrance. As it is not in my power to make you another visit in person, I

now write this letter in order to enquire after your welfare.

Tse-vang La-pu-tan used formerly to send his envoys frequently to our court, charged with tributary offerings. My sovereign always treated him with great kindness and compassion, often sent him gracious presents, and maintained a regular intercourse with him by messengers for many years. The conduct of my sovereign, in his administration of his empire over ten thousand nations, is full of mildness and benevolence. Every being, therefore, which breathes the air and has blood flowing in its veins, seeks to partake of the happiness and tranquillity which he dispenses around him. Thus, upon the overthrow and destruction of the rebel *Ko-eur-tan*, the *Ko-eur* tribes, which were in connection with him, should have been, in strictness, retained from that time in immediate subjection to the empire; but his Majesty, instead of enforcing his rights, allowed them to continue in their accustomed habits and pursuits without interruption. His Majesty entertains no other wish, than that all nations should enjoy their respective possessions in peace and security. Although my imperial master well knows that the power and resources of *Tse-vang La-pu-tan* are wretched and contemptible in the extreme, he

never entertained any thoughts of attacking and subduing him; but, on the contrary, until the present time, always countenanced and protected him. But the disposition of *Tse-vang La-pu-tan* is radically wicked and perverse. All the surrounding nations have witnessed how faithless he is to his engagements, and ungrateful for the favours conferred on him. Such being his character, it is impossible he should be tolerated much longer. In the mean while, I may instance to you his conduct towards your Tartar and Barabinsky tribes, who reside upon the borders of the districts of Tara and Tomsky. They have now for a long time been subject to your empire; yet he continues to extort a tribute from them, and frequently sends his people to attack and rob them of the goods which they are actually conveying to your country. He even seized and detained for several months some merchants of your own nation. After they had effected their escape from his hands, they came to trade at *Si-ning*, a district of this empire; but, when the season arrived for their return, they did not venture to pass again through *Tse-vang La-pu-tan*'s territories, but solicited permission to proceed by the way of our empire. They were conducted across the country to Selinginsky accordingly. In the affair also of the

troops stationed at the Salt Marshes, the lawlessness and ignorance of *Tse-vang La-pu-tan* have been equally manifested.

"Now, at length, *Tse-vang La-pu-tan*, without either estimating the weakness of his means, or the shamefulness of his purposes, has drawn upon himself the calamities of fire and sword. He has presumed to send privately a party of his marauders to invade and attack the *Hoei-tse* (Mahometan) tribes who inhabit the district of *Ha-mi*, upon our Chinese frontier. The 2000 Eleuths, whom he sent upon this enterprize, have indeed been already beaten three or four times by 200 of our Chinese soldiers, accompanied by a few of the native *Hoei-tse*, and the rats have accordingly returned to their holes; but the commander in chief of the imperial forces upon the frontier having reported the affair to the Emperor, his Majesty has been pleased to order and determine that the frontier troops, together with the Kalkas (auxiliaries), should be immediately put in motion: *Tse-vang La-pu-tan* is denounced as a public enemy, and measures are executing for his chastisement. In the event of any of *Tse-vang La-pu-tan*'s people attempting to escape and take refuge beyond the limits of his country, you will undoubtedly give orders to the officers commanding upon your frontiers to

seize and apprehend them; but our empire will not require of you to deliver them up to us, notwithstanding what has been arranged and agreed to in the Great Council. Still, however, since peace, amity, and good understanding have now been established between the two empires for many years, and afford a foundation for continuing the same friendly intercourse between our descendants; and as all the affairs of the province of Siberia are subject, as is well known, to your supreme authority and superintendance, the seizure and apprehension of the fugitive subjects and followers of *Tse-vang La-pu-tan* is an affair which justly demands your particular care and attention.

"Upon this subject, the imperial commands have already been issued. Our Emperor is truly most excellent and most benevolent; all mankind therefore naturally desire to range themselves under his protection. His Majesty will neither employ incapable generals, nor will he attack guiltless nations. In the present instance, he could do no otherwise than denounce the guilty, and employ his forces in their chastisement. I have therefore taken occasion in this letter specially to acquaint you with the above particulars. I am happy to embrace the present opportunity of expressing to you my affection and regard, and

I send herewith four pieces of silk for the favour of your acceptance."*

* The power, resources, and extensive territories of this Prince of the Kalmucs have been already alluded to, and are attested by all the contemporary writers, notwithstanding the contemptuous manner in which he is spoken of in the official documents of the Chinese government. Even from these, however, it is evident, that the co-operation of Russia was anxiously desired, and that the result of the war was felt to be somewhat doubtful. These Kalmucs were ultimately reduced to subjection under another reign, but in the present instance, it seems, they effectually asserted their independence.

The following particulars of their character, and of the circumstance of their contest with the Chinese, given by Mr. Bell, may perhaps not be found an uninteresting or unappropriate episode to the narrative of the Chinese historian.

"Before I leave this place, I imagine it will not be improper to subjoin a few more particulars relative to the Kontaysha, prince of the Kalmucks, whom I formerly mentioned. I am the more inclined to do this, as I can entirely depend on my intelligence; having procured it from persons who have been in that country, and seen this prince; but particularly from an ingenious and penetrating gentleman, who fills a public office in this place, and was employed in several messages to him from the late governor of Siberia.

"The territories of this prince are bounded by three of the most potent empires in the world; on the north by Russia, by China on the east, and by the country of the Great Mogul to the south. From the two first he is separated by desert plains; and from the third by almost impassable mountains. To the south-west his frontiers reach near to Bucharia. The Kontaysha is a very powerful prince, and able to bring into the field,

at a short warning, 100,000 horsemen, who are all of them able-bodied men, well mounted, and armed with bows and arrows, lances and sabres. This is a greater number of horse than any prince that I know can muster, except his Russian Majesty and the Emperor of China. These Tartars live in tents, all the year, removing from place to place, as called by necessity or inclination. This is the most ancient and pleasant manner of life. It is entertaining to hear them commiserate those who are confined to one place of abode, and obliged to support themselves by labour, which they reckon the greatest slavery.

"The Kontaysha has always some thousands of his subjects encamped near himself, who treat him with great veneration and respect. And, in justice to him, it must be confessed, that he is as attentive to the interests of his people, and as assiduous in the administration of justice, in particular, as if they were his own children.

"The Kalmucks are not such savage people as they are generally represented; for I am informed, a person may travel among them with greater safety, both in his person and effects, than in many other countries.

"The Kontaysha received the deputies from the Governor of Siberia like ambassadors from foreign princes, and treated them accordingly. This shows what high respect these eastern princes entertain for his Czarish Majesty, when the Governor of Siberia is regarded as a sovereign. The ceremony on these occasions was as follows:

"The deputy with his servants were admitted into the tent where the Kontaysha sat, with his queen and several children about him. He desired all of them to sit down on carpets or mats; for the Kalmucks, like most Asiatics, use no chairs. They were entertained with tea before dinner; and, after it, the Kontaysha dismissed the deputy in a friendly manner, telling him he would send for him next day to receive an answer to

the Governor's letter, which he punctually performed. This answer was expressed in very plain and concise terms. These Tartars in general write with brevity and perspicuity. I have seen several of their letters translated, which pleased me extremely, as they contained no tedious preambles nor disgusting repetitions, which serve only to perplex the reader.

"The Emperor of China was some time ago engaged in a war with the Kontaysha, about some frontier towns, of which the latter took possession, and maintained his claim with a strong army. The Emperor sent against him an army of 300,000 men, under the command of his fourteenth son, who is reckoned the best general of all his children. Notwithstanding their superiority in numbers, the Kontaysha defeated the Chinese in several actions. The Emperor at last thought it best to accommodate the difference, and a peace was concluded to the satisfaction of both parties.

"It must be observed, that the Chinese, being obliged to undertake a long and difficult march, through a desert and barren country, lying westward of the long wall; being also encumbered with artillery, and heavy carriages containing provisions for the whole army, during their march, had their force greatly diminished before they reached the enemy. The Kontaysha, on the other hand, having intelligence of the great army coming against him, waited patiently on his own frontiers, till the enemy was within a few days' march of his camp, when he sent out detachments of light horse to set fire to the grass, and lay waste the country. He also distracted them, day and night, with repeated alarms, which, together with want of provisions, obliged them to retire with considerable loss.

"This method of carrying on war, by wasting the country, is very ancient among the Tartars, and practised by all of them from the Danube eastward. This circumstance renders them a dreadful enemy to regular troops, who must thereby be deprived

of all subsistence, while the Tartars, having always many spare horses to kill and eat, are at no loss for provisions.

"I have only to add, that the Kontaysha must be the same prince who, in our European maps, is generally called the Great Cham of Tartary. As no Europeans travel through that country, these maps must be very erroneous. It is, however, to be expected, that the Russians will, in time, make a more complete discovery of the eastern parts of Asia."—*Bell,* vol. i. pp. 195—200.

APPENDIX;

CONSISTING OF

MISCELLANEOUS TRANSLATIONS.

I.

ABSTRACT OF THE FOUR FIRST CHAPTERS OF THE CHINESE NOVEL, ENTITLED YU-KIAO-LEE.

II.

NOTICES OF FOUR CHINESE PLAYS.

III.

EXTRACT FROM A CHINESE BOTANICAL WORK ON THE CULTURE OF COTTON.

IV.

EXTRACTS FROM THE PEKIN GAZETTE, &c.

APPENDIX I.

ABSTRACT

OF THE FOUR FIRST CHAPTERS

OF THE CHINESE NOVEL, ENTITLED

YU-KIAO-LEE.

CHAPTER I.

PE-TAY-CHANG, a Mandarine of distinguished rank, was married many years, without having any children. At length his wife brought him a daughter, whom he named *Hung-yu*, and who grew up to be equally beautiful and accomplished. Having lost her mother while young, she had the entire management of her father's household.

One day his wife's brother, the Mandarine *Oo-han-lin*, and his countryman and equal in age, the Mandarine *Sou-yu-see*, called upon him. They conversed and drank wine together for some time, and were proceeding to amuse themselves by making and comparing verses, when suddenly, the Mandarine *Tang-yu-sse* was announced; who, being a man of an unamiable character, was at this time particularly unwelcome. Finding them about to

make verses, he insisted upon their going on with their amusement, and a theme having been chosen, he called upon the master of the house *Pe-tay-chang*, to begin, saying, that unless he did so, he must be fined twenty cups of wine, as he should otherwise deem himself slighted by the refusal. *Pe-tay-chang* could not recollect any verses, and was therefore obliged to submit to the fine; but after he had drank six cups, he was so much affected by the liquor, that he was obliged to retire to his apartment for a while, in order to recover himself. His daughter *Hung-yu*, having heard from the servants what had passed, immediately began to consider how she might relieve her father from his embarrassment. For this purpose, she desired a servant to go into the hall where the company had assembled, and to endeavour to bring away the theme, without being noticed. Having seen the theme, she desired it might be replaced, and then, after a little consideration, composed a few couplets of verses upon it, which she sent to her father for his approbation. He had by this time somewhat recovered himself, and when he had perceived what his daughter had done, he was greatly pleased with this unlooked-for proof of her affection, as well as ingenuity. Having rejoined his visitors, he produced the verses, upon which they were all astonished, and confessed that they must themselves be fined, having neglected to prepare verses on their part, under the idea that their host would certainly be unable to produce any.

However, *Oo-han-lin*, narrowly examining the paper, found out the trick, and said, "This is certainly the handwriting and composition of your daughter *Hung-yu*."

What! said the others, is it possible that our host *Pe-tay-chang* has a daughter so ingenious and accomplished! They then asked whether she was yet affianced in marriage, and upon *Pe-tay-chang* replying that he had not yet met with any suitable proposals, *Tang-yu-sse* said, "Trust to me; I will contrive a proper match for her." After some further conversation, the party separated.

CHAPTER II.

THE Mandarine *Tang-yu-sse* had a son and a daughter. His son, named *Tang-fang*, was about twenty years of age, and tolerably agreeable in his person, but extremely stupid, as well as indolent. He had failed in his examination for his degree; but his father hoped to make up for the disappointment, by contriving for him an advantageous connexion in marriage. As soon, therefore, as he heard of the extraordinary accomplishments of the daughter of *Pe-tay-chang*, he determined, if possible, to obtain her for his son, though he was for some time at a loss how this scheme should be accomplished.

One day, a young gentleman named *Miao-te-ming*, brought a letter of introduction to him from a friend in the country. Finding, in the course of conversation, that *Miao-te-ming* had likewise brought with him letters of introduction to *Pe-tay-chang*, it immediately occurred to him that this young gentleman might be rendered instrumental in furthering his purpose.

He therefore requested him to take an opportunity,

when he visited *Pe-tay-chang*, to expatiate on the praises of his son *Tang-fang*, and to declare that, of all the young gentlemen he had seen at Pekin, he appeared to him by far the most amiable and accomplished.

Miao-te-ming having done as he was desired, certainly made a considerable impression by his observations; but still *Pe-tay-chang* harboured some doubts on the subject of the extraordinary merits of *Tang-fang*, and therefore determined not to think of him as a son-in-law, until he had, in the first instance, consulted the opinion of his friend and relative *Oo-han-lin*.

Oo-han-lin remarked, that if *Tang-fang* was really so clever and so amiable as he was described, it was strange that his father did not bring him more forward into notice. But, in order to ascertain the truth of the matter, *Oo-han-lin* proposed to give an entertainment to the father and son, and to invite *Pe-tay-chang* to meet them. This plan having been fixed upon, invitations were sent out accordingly to *Tang-yu-sse* and to *Tang-fang*. They both very readily assented, as they looked upon this circumstance as a favourable omen of the success of their project.

During the entertainment, *Tang-yu-sse* repeatedly assured the company that his son's silence proceeded wholly from his extreme modesty; and whenever he was addressed, *Tang-yu-sse* took care always to prompt a reply, in order to prevent his son committing himself, and discovering his incapacity.

However, after they had drank a good deal of wine, and had risen from table, *Tang-fang* was accidentally separated from his father, and, upon casting his eyes va-

cantly about him, happened to fix them on a particular inscription in a corner of the apartment.* *Oo-han-lin* noticed him, and said, "The sentence you are reading was written by a friend of mine, and is much admired." *Tang-yu-sse* the father not being at hand, there was nobody to check or to prompt him on this occasion, and he accordingly made so absurd a criticism upon the inscription, that, from that moment, *Pe-tay-chang* was completely undeceived respecting his boasted merits and abilities.

The father, *Tang-yu-sse*, being wholly unconscious of the imprudence of his son, returned home with the idea that he had made so favourable an impression, that his wishes were in a fair way of being accomplished. He thought, therefore, that he might proceed without further delay to make proposals in favour of his son, in the usual form; but knowing the firm and decided character of *Pe-tay-chang*, he thought it would be most advisable to endeavour to ensure his approbation, by employing in the negotiation the good offices of a mutual friend. He fixed upon *Su-yu-sse*, who readily accepted the commission, though he did not feel himself, by any means, confident of success.

* It is an universal usage among the Chinese to ornament their principal apartments with tablets, containing quotations from their poets and philosophers, and sometimes with the autographs and original compositions of their literary friends, which they take pains to display to advantage, whenever, from their intrinsic merit, or the name of the writer, they are considered to confer honour on the possessor.

CHAPTER III.

SU-YU-SSE went early in the morning to the house of *Pe-tay-chang*, in order to execute the commission he had undertaken. But, upon his proposing the match, the other immediately replied by relating what had passed at the entertainment recently given by *Oo-han-lin*, and he concluded by giving a decided refusal.

When *Su-yu-sse* communicated this unwelcome intelligence to *Tang-yu-see*, the latter was very much irritated, and said, "Perhaps the times may change, and *Pe-tay-chang*, who is at present so proud, may be reduced to solicit that alliance which he now disdains to accept when offered to him."

After *Su-yu-sse* had retired, *Tang-yu-sse* gave vent to his anger, and determined to contrive some mode of revenging himself. At length, he hit upon an expedient. The Emperor had directed him, in his official character, to recommend proper persons to be sent as ambassadors to make a treaty of peace with the Emperor of the North.* This was a difficult and unpleasant office, and was likely to engage the persons employed in it for a considerable time. He determined, therefore, to recommend that *Pe-tay-chang* should be one of those to be ap-

* The scene of this Novel appears to be laid at that particular period of the Chinese history, not long subsequent to the Christian era, when the empire was divided into two distinct independent governments. The wars which grew out of this state of things, and the consequent variety of adventures, seem to have rendered it the favourite era of Chinese romance.

pointed to this service. He imagined that *Pe-tay-chang* would in consequence be glad to get his daughter married almost upon any terms, rather than leave her single and unprotected, during his absence. The recommendation having been approved of by the Emperor, notice was officially given to *Pe-tay-chang* of the intended appointment. The intelligence astonished and distressed him beyond measure, both on account of his advanced age, and of the long separation to which he would be obliged to submit, from his beloved daughter. The same day, his friend *Su-yu-sse* called on him, and advised him to petition to be excused from the office, upon the plea of his advanced age and infirmities; he replied, "I know that this misfortune has fallen upon me through the machinations of my enemy *Tang-yu-sse;* but, since it is now the Emperor's pleasure, I do not think that it becomes me, as a faithful and honest minister, to make any objection."

When *Pe-tay-chang* informed his daughter of the office that had been assigned him, and of his determination to accept it, she wept bitterly, and said that she was the unfortunate cause of all her dear father's troubles and afflictions. He replied, that his chief concern at present was, how he should dispose of her during his absence, and protect her from the wicked designs of *Tang-yu-sse.*

After some consultation, she suggested to her father, that the best plan would be for him to announce publicly that all his family would continue to reside at their usual place of abode; but, at the same time, to send her away secretly to the house of his brother-in-law *Oo-han-lin,* and to request of him to let her remain there in concealment under his protection.

Pe-tay-chang highly approved of this plan; and, as *Oo-han-lin* anticipated his wishes by making an offer to that effect, he derived great consolation from it in the midst of all his difficulties.

Soon after this arrangement had been decided upon, the Mandarine *Chang-lee-poo* was announced, and as he was known to be an intimate friend of *Tang-yu-sse*, the object of his visit was immediately suspected.

In the course of conversation, he introduced the subject of *Pe-tay-chang*'s late appointment, and enquired particularly whether it was perfectly agreeable to him. He proceeded to hint, that if it were not so, it was possible for him to be discharged from it, provided he would comply with the wishes of *Tang-yu-see* relative to the proposed marriage; as that Mandarine, he knew, had influence enough to prevail on the Emperor to substitute, in his stead, some other person. *Pe-tay-chang* thanked *Chang-lee-poo* for his communication, but said, that whatever might be his private wishes, or the secret influence which caused his nomination on the present occasion, it was now sanctioned by the Emperor's sacred authority, and he therefore could not think of taking any steps to evade it.

Chang-lee-poo then took occasion to express his surprise at *Pe-tay-chang*'s objections to a match that seemed, in all respects, so advantageous; and he further suggested that, by agreeing to it, he would not only consult his own personal ease, but perhaps save himself and his family from a serious calamity: for it might operate very much to his prejudice not to reconcile a Mandarine of elevated rank, one of those, also, who would have to

decide hereafter both upon the period of his recal, and upon his conduct during his embassy.

Upon this, *Pe-tay-chang* observed, assuming a serious and decided tone, that he knew very well that his life or death, his good or ill fortune, were at the disposal of Heaven and of the Emperor; but he was determined that no man's influence or authority, however great, should have the effect of deterring him from the performance of his duty.

Chang-lee-poo then apologized, saying, he had meant well by this visit, and was sorry to find that he had, on the contrary, given offence. He soon after retired.

Pe-tay-chang was only more confirmed in his resolution, by this further proof of *Tang-yu-sse*'s insidious and unprincipled character. He therefore hastened his preparations, and when every thing was ready, he himself accompanied his daughter privately to the house of *Oohan-lin*, and finally left her in his brother-in-law's care, though both were severely afflicted at parting. On his return home, he completed his domestic arrangements, and set out with only the necessary travelling furniture, and two trusty servants; desiring the rest to take care of his house, and to inform all enquiring strangers, that his daughter resided there as usual. At the first station on the road, he stopped till he was joined by the Mandarine *Lee-shee*, who was appointed his colleague, and the first in the mission.

Now *Lee-shee* should properly have ranked only as second on this occasion, but he was placed above *Pe-tay-chang* through the influence of *Chang-lee-poo*, who contrived to put this slight upon the latter, in consequence

of what had passed during his last visit to him on behalf of *Tang-yu-sse*.

We shall not now follow these two Mandarines upon their journey to the North, but return to *Tang-yu-sse*, who, when he found that the spirit of *Pe-tay-chang* could not be subdued, nor his integrity corrupted, and that he preferred to expose himself to any hazards, rather than consent to the proposed alliance between their families, was enraged beyond measure. Still he did not at all despair of ultimately attaining his object, and was determined to leave no scheme untried, let it be ever so unjustifiable.

The first plan that occurred to him was, to endeavour to prevail upon *Chang-lee-poo* and *Su-yu-sse*, who had both been commissioned to negociate with *Pe-tay-chang*, to pretend that they had actually obtained his consent to the marriage; upon which authority, he trusted he might be able to get it concluded, before *Pe-tay-chang*, who was at a great distance, could know any thing of the matter.

He easily prevailed on *Chang-lee-poo* to assist him in this affair, but *Su-yu-sse*, when he heard that a similar compliance was likewise expected from him, on pain of having *Tang-yu-sse* for a dangerous and implacable enemy, in the event of a refusal, contrived to avoid the dilemma in which he was thus placed, by retiring altogether from court. With that view, he solicited, and procured for himself, an appointment to an office which had just become vacant, in the province of *Hou-quang*.

Previous to his departure from the capital, he called

upon *Oo-han-lin*, and informed him of the secret cause of his proposed retirement. *Oo-han-lin* was shocked at the wickedness of *Tang-yu-sse*, and observed, that he also should think it advisable to consult his safety by keeping out of the way of his intrigues. *Oo-han-lin*, therefore, soon after this, applied for, and obtained an indefinite leave of absence from the office at Pekin to which he belonged, and set out for his residence in the country, taking with him his charge, (whom he represented as his own daughter,) together with all the rest of his establishment.

What passed afterwards, we shall find in the next chapter.

CHAPTER IV.

OO-HAN-LIN arrived safe, with his family, at his country house at *Kin-ling*, in less than a month after his departure from Pekin. It is proper to mention, that he had one daughter named *Vu-zhin*, who was very plain in her person, and two years older than *Hung-yu*. To avoid all suspicion and danger of discovery, he changed the name of *Hung-yu* to that of *Vu-kiao*, and called her his second daughter, desiring his own daughter *Vu-zhin* always to call her sister.

In order to accomplish effectually the trust assigned him by *Pe-tay-chang*, he lost no time in making enquiries for a suitable match for his young ward; but he was for some time unsuccessful.

One day, however, he happened to go to a neighbour-

ing temple, which was agreeably situated, and much resorted to by the principal inhabitants of the district, some of whom occasionally dined there, and others amused themselves by writing verses, and hanging them upon the walls of the building.

Oo-han-lin read some of these verses, and was particularly struck with the couplets signed *Su-ye-pe*, of which the ink seemed scarcely yet dry. He called to him one of the priests, and asked, "Who is the writer of these pleasing verses?" He replied, "They were written by one of a party of young gentlemen, who occasionally come here to drink wine, and regale themselves. He asked, "Where are they now?" The priest replied, "Sir, they have retired, having made way for you and the other elderly gentlemen with you."

Oo-han-lin reflected within himself, that if this *Su-ye-pe* should prove as amiable and pleasing, as he appeared to be clever and well instructed, he would make an excellent husband for his ward now named *Vu-kiao*.

As he was returning home in his palanquin, he met this very party of young men, and upon being told which of them was *Su-ye-pe*, was delighted with his figure and appearance.

At that time, he took no further notice of him, but the next morning he sent an intelligent servant into the village, to enquire the particulars of the young man's history. It proved, that he belonged to a respectable but decayed family, which was not originally of the district of *Kin-ling*, but had migrated thither some time back. He had lost both his father and mother, and was at present maintained by his grandfather, who lived at some distance.

At this time, he was a candidate for the degree of *Sicou-tsay*, or Bachelor of Arts; and having gone through his examination, it was expected that the result would be made public in a few days. The servant concluded by saying, that he was about twenty years of age, and bore an excellent character.

When, shortly after, *Oo-han-lin* received a copy of the paper containing an account of the success of the several candidates, he was agreeably surprised by seeing the name of *Su-ye-pe* at the head of the list, and was much strengthened by this circumstance in his favourable opinion of him.

Upon this, he hesitated no longer, and immediately sent for an old woman named *Chang-meou-po*, whose profession it was to negociate matches, and desired her to make direct proposals of marriage, in favour of his ward, to the student *Su-ye-pe*.

The old woman found *Su-ye-pe* alone, and thus accosted him, "I bring you great good news, young man; much greater even than your late success in obtaining your degree. The great Mandarine *Oo-han-lin* offers you his daughter, the beautiful and accomplished *Vu-kiao*."

"This is very extraordinary," said the young man. "Is it possible that this great Mandarine, who might command the noblest alliances, can wish to have such a poor student as myself for a son-in-law?" The old woman answered, "*Oo-han-lin* is a very odd sort of a man. He cares not for rank or riches, provided that he can get a son-in-law possessed of the talents and the disposition

which he approves. Your pretty verses, and your general good character, have obtained for you this preference."

Su-ye-pe observed, "What you relate is certainly very flattering to me; particularly if the young lady is so agreeable as you describe. But I should like to obtain a sight of her, so as to be able to judge for myself."

"You cannot expect," says the old woman, "that so great a Mandarine as *Oo-han-lin* will permit his daughter to be looked at before marriage." "Then," answered he, "I at once decline the offer." "Well," continued the old woman, "since you will not believe me, I must contrive, some way, to convince you. There is an arbour in the Mandarine's garden, in which the young lady and her mother are accustomed to sit and take the fresh air. It is overlooked by a hillock, with some trees on it, outside of the garden wall. If you will conceal yourself, this afternoon, in the branches of one of them, you will have a good chance of seeing her. To-morrow I will call on you again, to take your final answer." The young man thanked the old woman, and said he would do as she had directed. Unfortunately, however, it so happened, that when *Su-ye-pe* went to conceal himself among the trees, *Vu-zhin*, the ugly daughter of *Oo-han-lin*, was in the arbour, instead of his beautiful ward *Vu-kiao*. Completely disgusted with her appearance, he was determined at once to have nothing to do with the match; but, in so doing, some precaution seemed to him necessary, as he wished to avoid, if possible, offending so great a Mandarine as *Oo-han-lin*.

When, therefore, the old woman came to him the next day, he told her that, upon further reflection, he had been convinced that he was unworthy of the high honour intended him; and that he had accordingly not availed himself of the means she had pointed out to him, of seeing the lady. The old woman, after using every argument in her power to move him, found him still positively determined to decline the offer, and it therefore only remained with her to report to *Oo-han-lin* the failure of the negotiation.

Oo-han-lin, when he heard it, was astonished, and thought the failure could only have arisen from the ignorance or awkwardness of the old woman. He, therefore, determined to try another expedient; and having sent for a young man of his acquaintance, named *Lieu-yeu-tching*, he informed him of what had passed, and requested he would interpose his good offices in bringing about the desired arrangement.—The result will be communicated in the next Chapter.

* * * * * * * * *

After encountering numerous obstacles, and going through a variety of adventures, of which a detail is given in the remaining twelve chapters, *Su-yu-sse* and *Vu-kiao* are at length happily united in marriage, to the great satisfaction of all their friends and connections.*

* The foregoing fragment is introduced chiefly with a view to the incidental illustration it affords of Chinese manners. The Translator had originally intended to have completed the version of the whole Novel, but the sequel was not of sufficient interest to encourage him to proceed in the work, and

it was found to be disfigured by two incidents which, at least the latter, rendered it unsuitable to his purpose, and wholly irreconcileable with our European notions and feelings. The *denouement* is brought about by a very unnecessary recourse to their Magical Superstitions; and the hero of the piece having, by a sort of under-plot, fallen into a love adventure with another damsel, equally amiable, but less nobly connected, he is under no embarrassment from this awkward dilemma, but is happily united in marriage to both the ladies, to the entire satisfaction and approbation of all the parties.

These peculiarities may, however, in other respects, perhaps, rather enhance the interest of the novel, than otherwise, considered simply as an illustration of national manners: the translator has, therefore, great pleasure in noticing, that since sending the present work to the press, he has been informed that a distinguished Chinese scholar on the Continent, M. Abel. Remusat, from whom we already possess some valuable translations, has made considerable progress in an entire version of it, with which, it is to be hoped, he will, ere long, favour the public.

APPENDIX II.

NOTICES

OF FOUR CHINESE PLAYS,

WHICH FORM PART OF A COLLECTION, ENTITLED

*YUEN-JIN-PE-TCHONG.**

I.—THE STUDENT'S DAUGHTER REVENGED.

ARGUMENT.

First Part.

A RICH old woman has one son, a child of eight years. A poor student, who has a daughter seven years of age, borrows a small sum of money from the old woman, which he afterwards finds himself unable to repay. In lieu of payment, he leaves his daughter with the old woman, and consents to her being affianced as the future wife of her son.

Second Part.

Thirteen years after, the student's daughter, now twenty years of age, is still living with the old woman,

* The "Orphan of *Tchao*," translated by father Premare, and the "Heir in Old Age," translated by Mr. Davis, were both taken from the above collection, which contains altogether, as its title implies, one hundred plays; and although those of which the translator has subjoined the following short notices, may not be considered to hold out much inducement to a further examination of the work, he is still inclined to think that it contains many plays, which, translated accurately, and at length, would not prove uninteresting.

although, her son having died young, the intended marriage could not take place. One day the old woman goes to an apothecary to demand payment of a debt—the apothecary persuades her to accompany him to a bye place, and there attempts to kill her—but they accidentally meet two men, a father and son, who interpose, and save her life. They claim in return for this service, respectively, the old woman and the student's daughter in marriage.—The old woman at first refuses, but on being threatened, consents, and brings the strangers home to her house: the student's daughter, on being informed of this engagement, positively refuses to ratify it on her part; but, the old woman having married the elder stranger, both of them become inmates of the house, and the younger stranger perseveres in urging his suit.

Third Part.

The younger stranger being still unable to persuade the student's daughter to marry him, conceives he may be able to prevail, by previously getting rid of the old woman; and accordingly goes to the afore-mentioned apothecary to purchase some poison. The apothecary makes objections; but, on being recognized, and threatened with a discovery of his former attempt to commit murder, he complies, and the young man, having obtained the poison, puts it into some broth, intended for the old woman, who is sick. By some mistake, however, the elder stranger, the father of the younger, drinks the broth in her stead, and dies immediately.—The scheme of the younger stranger being thus frustrated, he repeats his demand of the student's daughter in mar-

riage, and threatens to accuse both her and the old woman of the murder of his father, if she persists in her refusal—she remains, nevertheless, inflexible—both the women are then brought before a magistrate, and charged with the murder—and the younger being put to the torture to compel her to confess, resists firmly for some time; but, seeing the old woman about to be tortured likewise, her fortitude fails her, and she charges herself with the murder, though innocent.

The magistrate then declares himself satisfied; and, having pronounced sentence of death upon the young woman, is thanked by the false accuser for his righteous judgment.

Fourth Part.

The student's daughter is brought out for execution—attests her innocence, and begs her life—but is not spared.—She declares, just before her execution, that in testimony of her innocence, it will snow though in the midst of summer; that her blood will fly upwards, and stain the ensigns of the tribunal; and that there will be a drought for three years in the district wherein she is executed.—All these prodigies happen accordingly.

Fifth Part.

The poor student, in the mean while, had become a great Mandarin, and it was part of his duty to revise, occasionally, the proceedings of inferior magistrates.—One day, when he happened, unawares, to be reading the record of the trial and of the sentence passed upon his own daughter (of whom he had heard nothing, since he

had parted from her, when a child) her ghost appears to him, relates the injustice which had been committed, and calls for revenge. Upon this he immediately summons all the parties before him—institutes a new trial—rectifies the sentence—appeases the ghost—condemns the false accuser, who was himself the murderer, to be cut into ten thousand pieces; banishes the wicked apothecary for life; and lastly, sentences the unjust magistrate to the corporal punishment of one hundred blows, and dismission from his office for ever.

II.—THE STRATAGEMS OF THE GENERALS WHOSE FORCES THE RIVER DIVIDED.

DRAMATIS PERSONÆ.

Lieou-py, King of *Hung-cheu*, and descendant of the Imperial Dynasty of *Han*.
Lieou-tuy, his son.
Chu-ko-leang, his generalissimo.
Chang-fee, 2d in command.
Seao-yun, 3d do.
Quan-yu, an Officer.
Sun-kuien, King of *Ou*.
Sun-gan, his daughter, affianced to *Lieou-py*.
Moey-siang, her female attendant.
Cheu-yu, Generalissimo of the kingdom of *Ou*.
Kan-ning, *Ling-suien*, } Officers serving under *Cheu-yu*.

All the stratagems of *Cheu-yu* are finally defeated, and *Lieou-py* is declared Emperor.

III.—LEAVING A SLIPPER, ON THE NEW MOON.

DRAMATIS PERSONÆ.

Vang-yue-ying, aged 18, daughter of the widow *Lee*, a vender of perfumery.

Moey-siang, her female companion.

Kuo-chuy, a young Student of *Lo-yang*, aged 23, an orphan.

Kui-tong, his servant.

Pao-she-chee, a Magistrate.

Chang-chen, his attendant.

Vang-yue-ying and *Kuo-chuy*, being enamoured of each other, agree to meet secretly at a temple, on the first evening of the New Moon. The young man comes first, but having drank too much wine, falls asleep; and the young woman, who comes after, not being able to wake him, leaves a slipper by way of remembrance, and departs.—When the young man wakes and sees the slipper, he is about to destroy himself for disappointment, but is prevented—and finally receives the hand of the lady.

IV.—CURING FISH ON THE BANKS OF THE RIVER, IN AUTUMN.

DRAMATIS PERSONÆ.

Pe-ku-ku, a Priestess.

Pe-she-chung her nephew, an officer of *Tan-cheu*.

Tan-kee-eur, a beautiful widow, married to *Pe-she-chung*.

Tang-ya-nuy, a powerful and licentious magistrate, who wishes to obtain *Tan-kee-eur* for a concubine.

Chang-chen, } his attendants.
Lee-siao, }

Yuen-kung, steward of *Pe-she-chung*.

Lee-ping-ching, a superior Mandarin.

Tang-ya-nuy procures from the Emperor, upon false pretences, an order to seize and put to death *Pe-she-chung*, in order, afterwards, to obtain his widow for himself as a concubine. She, on hearing of this, goes to meet *Tang-ya-nuy* by the river side, disguised as a curer of fish; and contrives to amuse him by her blandishments, while she secretly steals from him the Emperor's order for the destruction of her husband—His purpose is thus defeated, and time is given for the Emperor to learn the truth, and to send *Lee-ping-ching* to do justice to all parties.

APPENDIX III.

EXTRACT

FROM A CHINESE BOTANICAL WORK, OR HERBAL,

ENTITLED

KUEN-FANG-POO;

VOLUME 10th, PAGE 177—185.

ON THE CHARACTER, CULTURE, AND USES OF THE ANNUAL HERBACEOUS COTTON PLANT.

THIS vegetable, distinguished by the general term *Kie-poey*, is raised from seed, to be placed in the ground at the commencement of the spring. The first leaflets that appear above the ground are of a thick woody nature; the other leaves resemble those of the *Moutan*, except in being smaller. The flowers are yellow and single, and in other respects are like the autumnal mallow. Height and length of stem are not esteemed in the culture of this plant, so much as numerous and spreading branches. The pods, or capsules, are triangular, of a green colour and pointed at the top, bearing some resemblance to fruits of the peach kind, which has given rise to the appellation of "wool bearing peach," by which the inhabitants of the Northern Provinces some-

times distinguish it. The pods open spontaneously when ripe, discovering the cotton within, appearing like fine goose-down, and not very far inferior in quality to the finest silk.

The cotton, in its raw state, affords a light and pleasant lining for clothes; the seeds yield an oil, which being expressed from them, the remainder is serviceable as manure; the capsules, or pods, being hard and woody, are used for firing, and the leaves afford nourishment to cattle, so that every part of this vegetable may be appropriated to some useful purpose.

The soil most favourable to the culture of the plant is a white sand, with a small proportion only of clay or loam. A species of soil equally partaking of both characters will, however, answer the purpose, though the former proportions are preferable.

The cotton plant generally affects an elevated open situation, and cannot endure low marshy grounds.

After all the cotton pods are gathered, the remaining stems and branches should be cleared away without loss of time, and the ground carefully ploughed up, to expose a new surface to the air, and renew the vigour of the soil. When the plough has passed over the ground three times, the earth should be raked level, that the wind may not raise or dry up any part of it.

If the ground had not been ploughed more than twice in the autumn, it will be advisable in the 1st month, (February,) when the moisture of the earth begins to exhale, and the rain to become frequent, to repeat that operation a third time.

Where there is an abundance of manure, it may be

laid on previous to the use of the plough; but if it is scarce, and not procurable in considerable quantity, it will be preferable to apply it to the soil at the time of sowing the seed. The manure should be old and well prepared; one of the best ingredients for the purpose is the refuse of vegetable substances from which an oil has been expressed.

In the southern provinces, the cotton plants will last for two or three years* from the same seed, but to the northward, the cotton must be sown annually.

There are many varieties of this plant, 1. the *Kiang-wha,* cultivated in the province of *Hou-quang:* twenty parts weight of the pods yield five of the cotton, which is of a coarse and rough quality.

2. The *Pe-wha* is met with in the province of *Shan-tung,* and in the territory of Pekin. It is finer than the former, and adapted for the loom; the pods yield four parts out of twenty of cotton.

3. The *Che-wha* is met with in the province of *Che-kiang;* the pods yield seven parts out of twenty, and the cotton is well adapted for the loom.

Besides these, there are other kinds, distinguished by the colour of the seed, such as

4. The *Whang-tee* and *Yang-tee,* the seeds of which are of a brown colour.

5. The *Ching-he* bears a small green seed.

6. The *He-he* bears a seed of a deep black colour, and

7. The *Quan-ta-yee,* a white furrowed seed. The last four varieties yield nine parts of cotton out of twenty

* At Canton, the cotton plant is considered an annual.

of the pod, and are all well calculated for the loom, except the *Whang Tee*, which is rough and coarse.

8. Another variety produces cotton of a dusky yellow colour, the wool whereof is very fine and easily separable from the seeds, which are of a considerable size, so that the pods do not afford, upon an average, more than four parts out of twenty of clean cotton. The cloth made from this species of cotton is not showy or inviting in its appearance, and is mostly worn by students and retired persons.

9. There is one more species to be noticed, which bears a dark green seed, but is very scarce, and cultivated to a very small extent.

Of all the above-mentioned varieties, the *Ching-he*, or small green seed, may be considered as the best and most eligible.

It is supposed by many that the cotton plant would not succeed when removed from its native soil; but they do not recollect that the culture of this plant was formerly confined to one or two of the southern provinces, but is now spread almost universally throughout the empire.*

FURTHER OBSERVATIONS ON THE CULTURE OF THE HERBACEOUS COTTON PLANT, EXTRACTED FROM THE SAME WORK.

1. *Choice of the Seed.* The pods must be gathered

* It is universally believed at Canton that the brown cotton above-mentioned, of which the cloth called by Europeans nankeen is made, is peculiar to the province of *Kiang-nan*, and could no more be raised in the southern provinces, than the white nankeen silk could be produced at Canton. Both experiments are said to have been made, and to have entirely failed.

after they are completely ripened, and before the frost sets in, and the most experienced farmers recommend, that in the winter months the seed should be taken from the pod and gradually dried; using particular caution, if any tendency appears in the seed to germinate, either at that time, or in the commencement of the spring.

Seeds that are dried up by fire, soaked for a continuance in water, or gathered when unripe, will fail of success.

Previous to sowing, the seed ought to be immersed in water for the space of one hour, when such of the seeds as are injured, or unfit for use, will float on the surface, while those that are fresh and serviceable settle at the bottom of the vessel.

If the seed, moreover, be immersed in snow water, the plant will endure a greater degree of drought; and if the *man-yu* (eels) be previously boiled in the water that is used, the plants will resist the attacks of insects.

2. *Sowing of the Seed.* The seed must not be placed in the ground too soon, lest the frost in the spring should injure the early shoots; or too late, lest the frost in the autumn should prevent the pods from coming to maturity. To avoid both these evils, the period from the first to the last day of the 3d Moon (April) will be found most advantageous for sowing.

There are three methods in use for sowing the seed; either broad cast, in furrows, or in spots traced out for the purpose.

In the first, a large quantity of seed is expended, and the subsequent crop gathered in with difficulty; in the second, the latter inconvenience is avoided, but still at the expense of much seed. The third mode requires

the least quantity of seed, and affords a crop well suited to the convenience of the husbandman, but is more laborious than the former two.

According to the latter method, the cotton field being ploughed up as usual, small openings are to be made in the ground at the distance of one cubit from each other, and in straight lines a cubit apart. A small quantity of water is then poured in, and, having subsided, four or five of the seeds of cotton are thrown into each opening, and covered over by the contents of one spade of manure and another of mould; all of which is then firmly trodden down with the feet. The labour of three persons is required, one to sow the seed, and two to throw in the manure.

If the seed is sown by the broad cast method, or in furrows, a stone roller will be necessary to press the earth down over them; for, unless the seeds are carefully covered, they will either not vegetate at all, or the young shoots will afterwards be easily withered up by exposure.

3. *The Weeding and attendance during the growth of the young plants.*

In the first place it will be necessary to remove weeds and rubbish from the young shoots, and lay fine light mould about the roots, that they may spread and strike deep into the ground.

Several times in the course of the season, care ought to be taken to divide and break down all the large lumps of earth that may collect about the plants.

When the young plants first appear above the ground, none of them should be disturbed, that in the failure of one, another may supply its place: but when they have attained some degree of strength and size, the most per-

fect and advanced shoot in each spot should be selected, and the rest rooted out; for if two or more are suffered to rise together, they will increase in height without lateral branches; and with large thick leaves, but the pods of cotton will be few and unproductive.

No other vegetable should be sown on the same ground, lest the strength of the soil, being thus divided, should be inadequate to the nourishment of the cotton plants.

The space between each stem ought not to be less than one cubit, as above-mentioned, for the plants would thereby be more liable to harbour insects, and afford a less favourable crop, though on a rich soil, luxuriant plants nevertheless might be produced.

In general, the seeds that are sparingly sown will receive a greater proportion of nourishment from the earth; each plant will afterwards afford a greater number of pods, and the harvest altogether will be most plentiful.

Not being crowded, the air will find a passage among the plants, and the weaker shoots will not be injured or overpowered by such as are more vigorous, but the whole will come to maturity nearly at the same time.

On the other hand, for the sake of the mutual support and protection of the plants, a greater space between them than the above-mentioned should be avoided.

According to this method of culture, each plant will bear above an hundred pods, and the produce of a *meu* will amount to between two and three hundred *kin** of cotton, affording a fair profit to the cultivator.

4. *Pruning, and cutting away the heads.*

* At Canton a *meu* is estimated to be a superficies containing 6000 square cubits, of about 14 inches each; but the measure differs in different provinces. A *kin* is about a third more than the English pound.

When the young plant rises to the height of seven or eight inches above the surface; the extreme germ, or bud, should be taken off to encourage the growth of the lateral branches, which must also be pruned in the like manner, when about half a cubit in length, to prevent the branches from spreading too far in the same direction. By these means the greatest number of flowers will be obtained, and which will be found between every leaf. The operation of pruning the plants may be performed from the middle to the latter end of the summer, avoiding damp and rainy weather, which might rot and injure the stems.

5. *Gathering of the Cotton.*

After the pods, or capsules, are formed, they are not esteemed ripe until they split open naturally, and the cotton appears from within. Each pod should be gathered according as it arrives at maturity, and they then should be spread out on a mat for exposure to the open air, by day and night, until the seeds are entirely dry; when they may be stored up in jars, or other vessels, without danger of the cotton becoming damp, or the seeds rotten.

6. *Preparation and Spinning of the Cotton.*

The cotton being completely dry, is picked from the seed and carded very fine, previous to its being spun into thread. An exposure to the wind is generally supposed to be detrimental to the formation of fine thread; it has been, therefore, recommended to place the spinning wheels in chambers sunk considerably in the ground, and lighted only from the roof; a precaution of this kind is, however, allowed to be unnecessary in calm moist weather.

* Thus in the original; but "spring" would probably have been more correct.

7. *Weaving of the Cloth.*

There is a great variety of cloths manufactured of cotton thread, such as the *oo-lin, poey-pu,* &c. &c.; but the finest and most esteemed, is made in the island of Haynan. The custom of pouring rice water, or *conge,* over the cotton threads when in the loom, is practised in most of the southern provinces, and should be done in close apartments that are not exposed to the wind and dust, unless the weather without should be very calm and mild.

APPENDIX IV.

EXTRACTS FROM THE PEKIN GAZETTE.

I.

The 14th of the 1st Moon of the 4th year of Kia King. } February the 18th, 1799.

IMPERIAL EDICT.

THE council of princes and great officers of state has lately submitted to us, in an address, that the full observance of mourning for the space of three years would be extremely inexpedient; and, therefore, recommends that we do not exceed twenty-seven moon's mourning, according to ancient regulations.

The object of this address is by no means agreeable to the intentions we had formed on this occasion: for having been nurtured and educated under the paternal care and bounteous protection of our imperial father (the Emperor *Kien-lung*), whose favour was as inestimable and boundless as the blessings of heaven, we cannot now contemplate this most solemn event which has suddenly befallen us, in the departure and ascension of his imperial spirit, without reflecting how infinitely inadequate and unable we have been to requite the vast obligations which we have incurred; and that the strict observance of a three years' mourning is the

only mode now left us of testifying the smallest portion of that gratitude and affection in which we are still deficient towards him.

At present, although the princes and great officers of state have also suggested to us a shorter period of general mourning to be adopted by the higher orders of the community, according to regulations heretofore established, yet we observe that our Imperial father, the late most high Emperor, upon the demise of our Imperial grandfather, had instituted a new period of an hundred days for the universal mourning; though he submitted, in other respects, to the ancient regulations.

At the sight, therefore, of the present address, our grief and compunction are redoubled; but since our council of princes and ministers has taken into consideration the period to be allotted to mourning for the demise of our Imperial father, and has thrice made representations to us on that subject, we dare not come forward, from our own weak suggestions, and presume to exceed the period wisely determined on a former occasion: we therefore feel ourselves under the unavoidable necessity of thus far acceding to their request.

It is, accordingly, our pleasure that the full and universal mourning shall continue for one hundred days, and that the observance of mourning shall altogether cease and determine in a period of twenty-seven moons; and we further direct that the said council do now proceed to investigate and expound the ancient and established regulations regarding the administration of sacrifices, public audiences, and other transactions that are to take place during that interval; and we lastly

declare, that we do not require of the council to address us further on the subject. *Khin-tse,* [i. e. respect this.]

II.

The 14th of the 1st Moon of the 4th year of Kia King. } February the 18th, 1799.

IMPERIAL EDICT.

LY-QUONG-YUN has been of late appointed to the presidency of the college at Canton; but as he has since laboured under a bilious and chronical disease, we conceive that the moist atmosphere of that city cannot be favourable to his recovery, and likewise apprehend that the state of his health may incapacitate him from duly executing the functions of that office; we, therefore, do not require of him to proceed thither, and hereby appoint *Vang-chin-fung* to the vacant presidency. *Khin-tse.*

III.

The 14th of the 1st Moon of the 4th year of Kia King. } February the 18th, 1799.

IMPERIAL EDICT.

THE noble officer *Pao-ning* has already been promoted to the department of minister of state, and we are aware that the general officers, and other persons of rank, who, after having held a supreme command on the frontiers, have the ministerial rank conferred upon them, are generally employed thenceforward in the interior departments. But, as the supreme command at *Elee* is a post of great importance, for which we have not yet found any

other officer duly qualified, it is desired that *Pao-ning* do continue to discharge the duties of that government, and we enjoin him to persevere in that rectitude and sincerity, which has hitherto marked his conduct, until we shall have made choice of an officer to supply his place; upon which event we shall immediately issue our orders for his recal to Court. *Khin-tse.*

IV.

The 14th of the 1st Moon of the 4th year of Kia King. } February the 18th, 1799.

IMPERIAL EDICT.

It is our pleasure that, henceforward, all supreme tribunals, civil and military officers of the first rank, the viceroys, sub-viceroys, treasurers, and judges of the different provinces, and all other such ordinary magistrates as may be entitled to frame addresses for the Imperial consideration, and likewise all general officers in garrison or in the field, who may have to report to us the result of their proceedings; shall specially direct the said addresses, or reports, to be delivered, to ourself, for our immediate inspection; and we expressly forbid, that the same should be addressed, under a cover, to the care of our council of great officers of state.

The supreme tribunals, and chief civil and military officers are likewise charged not to create any delay, by giving previous information to the said council, of the reports or addresses they may have occasion to present; for it is our intention to give audience, and to consult on

the measures consequent thereon, on the very same day that they report their proceedings.

Lastly; we disapprove of the tribunals communicating with, or taking the advice of, our said council of great officers of state, with regard to the administration of the affairs of their respective departments, as we apprehend that a dangerous and corrupt combination may be the consequence of such a correspondence.

We therefore make public the present declaration of our will in this respect, that it may be strictly and universally conformed to. *Khin-tse.*

V.

The 23d of the 1st Moon of the 4th year of Kia King. } February the 27th, 1799.

IMPERIAL EDICT.

THE council of princes and great officers of state, appointed to superintend the ceremonial of the present mourning, have recommended, that as the sacred *Bier* is to be carried out on the 23d instant, we should accompany it on foot as far as the gate *Tong-wha-men,* and proceed from thence in our carriage of state immediately through the gate *Shin-vu-men* to the palace of *Quan-te-tien,* and await there the subsequent arrival of the sacred *Bier.* That we should then continue our route through the eastern gate, on the hill of *King-shan,* in order to perform the genuflexions appointed on this occasion.

This address, indeed, springs from the faithful attach-

ment of the council, which is extremely laudable on their part; but we cannot neglect respectfully to consult the ritual regulations that have been established on this head.

We find, accordingly, that, upon the occasion of the transportation of the sacred *Bier* of our illustrious ancestor *Kang-hee*, our Imperial grandfather had accompanied it on foot, as far as the palace of *Sheu-wang-tien*, and then authorized the celebration of the funeral rites, by the civil and military officers, whom an Imperial order had previously assembled. Our Imperial grandfather had then attained the forty-fifth year of his age, whereas, we have not yet exceeded our fortieth, and are still hale and robust, so that with the support and assistance of the officers in waiting, and considering that the distance altogether is not extremely great, we think we shall be able respectfully to accompany the sacred *Bier* on foot throughout the journey, and execute that duty to our ease and satisfaction.

With regard to the funeral rites successively appointed to be performed, we shall act therein so as not to omit the due consideration of the duties which are, at the same time, imposed upon us, by the government of the empire which is now committed to our charge.

We, therefore, do not comply with the proposed arrangement of the council, and the said council need not address us further on the subject. *Khin-tse.*

VI.

The 23d of the 1st Moon of the 4th year of Kia King. } February the 27th, 1799.

IMPERIAL EDICT.

THE grandson of the great officer of state, *Sun-te-tien*,

named *Sun-quen-yuen*, is a native of China (i. e. not a Tartar), and is, by far, too young to have acquired the abilities and experience requisite in the office of *San-tie-ta-chin*. We, therefore, direct that he shall return to, and serve under, the banner to which he is attached, and that he shall cease to discharge the functions of *San-tie-ta-chin* accordingly.

The vice-presidency of the tribunal of rites being vacant, the officer, *Tsao-ching*, shall succeed to the same, and *Tsu-tien-luey* shall be promoted to the vice-presidency of the tribunal of arms.

Foo-ching shall in the same manner succeed to the appointment of chief justice of the province of *Gan-wey*, and *Lieu-wang* to the presidency of the college, in the province of *Che-kiang*, and proceed thither forthwith. *Khin-tse.*

VII.

25th and 26th of the 3d Moon of the 5th year of Kia King. } April the 18th and 19th, 1800.

IMPERIAL EDICT.

When our General and Commander-in-chief *Gé-le-teng-pao* received orders to proceed against the rebels, in the province of *Kan-soo*, *Quay-lung*, at that time viceroy of the adjoining province of *Sé-chuen*, requested of us to confer on him the command of the troops destined to engage the rebels on the side of *Se-chuen*, and we accordingly invested him with the necessary powers.

Nevertheless, we since find, that in conducting the operations of the campaign, he has proved so remiss in

providing for the means of defence, so negligent in procuring information respecting the situation of the enemy, and otherwise so ill qualified to execute the trust reposed in him, that the rebels have met with little resistance to their progress, and have extended their ravages through a fertile part of the country, in the western part of *Sechuen*, which had never before suffered from their hostilities.

For these offences, *Quay-lung* merits immediate degradation from his post, and commitment to trial before the supreme tribunal; but the State being unprovided at present with an officer duly qualified to succeed immediately to the command, we resolve to extend to *Quay-lung* our Royal favour, and permit him to hold his situation, and wear an honorary button, though nominally to be degraded and deprived of the insignia of the peacock's feather; and we thus enable him, by a vigorous defence and resistance, to make all the reparation in his power for the calamities his misconduct has occasioned.

Our General *Te-lin-tay*, by his exertions and skilful manœuvres, has been more successful, and in the course of successive victories, has captured many of the principal leaders of the rebellion.

We still, however, continue *Quay-lung* in the post of the vice-royalty of the province, considering, that by a pertinacious defence of the banks of the *Tung-ho* river, he may in some measure retrieve the credit he has forfeited. It is indispensable, indeed, that we should degrade him from the first to the third degree of rank, in proof of our sense of his misconduct; to be restored, however, to the

full possession of his former rank and dignity, after an irreproachable discharge of the duties of his station during the eight succeeding years.

Confiding in this expectation, we have thus administered only a trifling correction; and we likewise exempt him from any further enquiry into his past conduct, before the supreme criminal tribunal. *Khin-tse.*

VIII.

25th and 26th of the 3d Moon of the 5th year of Kia King. } April 18th and 19th, 1800.

IMPERIAL EDICT.

CERTAIN presents and sums of money having been unlawfully exacted, by a eunuch, in the service of the noble officer *Gen-ming;* we have to observe, that our disapprobation at this circumstance is augmented by the consideration, that the officer *Gen-ming* had been virtually restricted, by a former order, from having any eunuchs at all in his service.

Having directed the supreme court of judicature, at *Pe-kin,* to investigate the circumstances of this affair, we hereby declare it unlawful, in future, for any of our subjects to retain eunuchs in their service, except civil and officers of the highest rank, and Princes of the blood: and such persons are limited to four attendants only of that description, and are enjoined to send all those that they may have in their service exceeding that number, to the Imperial palaces, for the service of the court. *Khin-tse.*

IX.

25th and 26th of the 3d Moon of the 5th year of Kia King. } 18th and 19th April, 1800.

IMPERIAL EDICT.

THE vice-roy of the province of *Pe-chee-lee* and others have represented to us that the civil officers who had been appointed to purchase grain for the supply of the Imperial granaries, have extorted it from the people at a very low and unjust valuation, and have obliged them to bring their corn and other grain, by land, to a considerable distance, the farmers and husbandmen suffering much inconvenience on that account. We therefore now direct, that the viceroy and chief magistrates of the province do investigate and take measures against these corrupt and pernicious customs. *Khin-tse.*

X.

1st and 2d of the 4th Moon of the 5th year of Kia King. } April 24th and 25th, 1800.

IMPERIAL EDICT.

THE army commissioner, *Tsing-tay*, having been found guilty of fraudulently suppressing part of the legal supplies destined for the troops at *Kia-lin*, and applying the sums thus appropriated to private purposes, it is ordered that he shall receive forty blows of the bamboo, and be sent into exile at *Elee*. It is further ordered, that the Lieutenant *Tang-lin*, who connived at, and encouraged these corrupt practices, shall likewise receive forty blows of the bamboo, but shall continue to serve in his regiment,

holding, however, one of the most laborious and least honourable situations in it, to perpetuate his disgrace. *Khin-tse.*

XI.

1st and 2d of the 4th Moon of the 5th year of Kia King. } April 24th and 25th, 1800.

IMPERIAL EDICT.

It appears that there are now many descendants in the second and third generation, of persons in the highest rank of nobility, who, from misfortunes or other causes, have been reduced to poverty or very humble employments: it is therefore ordered, that all such persons who have not attained the 7th degree of civil, or the 5th degree of military rank, shall be presented at court, that they may be pensioned, or raised in rank, according to their respective claims. *Khin-tse.*

XII.

5th and 6th of the 4th Moon of the 5th year of Kia King. } April 28th and 29th, 1800.

IMPERIAL EDICT.

Last year, *Quay-lung*, when at court, and in our presence, very earnestly requested, that a command might be given him to fight against the rebels, because, having formerly been employed in the province of *Se-chuen*, he possessed much local knowledge and experience in that part of the country, and he boasted very much of his ability to overcome and subdue the rebellion.

Though we placed little confidence in these extravagant assurances, yet, as we were at that time in want of an officer, properly qualified to fill the vacant vice-royalty of *Se-chuen,* we granted to him the temporary possession of that office. At first he discharged the duties of his office with some shew of ability; and latterly, if he had found himself really incompetent to the task of carrying on the war, he might have given up the command of the army to the General *Ge-le-teng-pao,* or have given us timely notice to appoint some other officer to that service. On the contrary, after intimation had been received of the passage of the rebels across the boundaries of the provinces of *Se-chuen* and *Kan-soo,* he still remained eight days with the army at the city of *Ta-cheu,* without doing any thing; in which interval, the rebels crossed the river *Kia-lin-Kiang,* and committed considerable damage. *Quay-lung* then only ordered a detachment to proceed against them, under the command of an inferior officer, and did not himself take the field, but remained with the rest of the army, at *Ta-cheu.* This detachment not being followed up, or supported by the remaining forces, was unsuccessful, and the officer at its head unfortunately cut off by the enemy. After these effects of his negligence and timidity, all that remained in his power was to defend and secure the banks of the *Tung-ho.* The rebels having effected a passage across the *Kia-lin-Kiang,* had laid the way open for their march to the capital of the province, which they might at that time have easily reached, had they not fortunately been diverted from that object, by the approaching birth-day of one of their leaders, which they resolved to celebrate with great festivity.

It was also a fortunate circumstance, at this juncture, that we had issued orders to the General *Te-lin-tay* to pass over with his army, from *Shen-see* to *Se-chuen*, to assist in the defence of the latter province. *Te-lin-tay* lost no time in obeying our commands, and a succession of victories, as well as the capture of two of the most considerable rebel leaders, *Tsay-tien-yuen* and *Ly-pin*, were the consequence of his entrance into the province of *Se-chuen*. The former neglect and misconduct of *Quay-lung* was very unpardonable, but might, in some measure, have been retrieved by an able defence of the river *Tung-ho;* for the rebels must inevitably have surrendered, had their progress been opposed from that quarter, while they had been driven forward by the army of *Te-lin-tay* on the other.

Considering, also, the services formerly rendered by *Quay-lung*, we did not entirely disgrace him on this occasion, but changed his rank from the first to the third degree, and left him in possession of his office, and spared him any further examination of his conduct, giving him notice, however, that, on the activity and diligence with which he should defend the banks of the *Tung-ho*, his life and fortune must ultimately depend.

Notwithstanding all these circumstances, we now receive accounts of the rebels having reached the city of *Tay-pin*, and possessed themselves of the district of *Vang-chu-tsay*, in consequence of their having effected the passage of the river *Tung-ho* above-mentioned.

Since the receipt of this grievous intelligence, we have been somewhat relieved by satisfactory accounts from the General *Te-lin-tay*, who, having night and day exerted his

utmost endeavours in our service, has, since his entry into the province, taken above 1300 prisoners, put an equal number to the sword, and liberated above 20,000 country people from the oppression of the rebels. Four considerable stations also of the rebels have surrendered to his arms, so that we may now look forward with confidence to a speedy restoration of peace in that province. But *Quay-lung* having, by his unparalleled remissness and neglect, suffered the rebels in the first place to gain a passage across the *Kia-lin-kiang*, and afterwards across the *Tung-ho*, whereby the damage and injury that has arisen to the people is like a baneful pestilence; to leave it unpunished or unrevenged, would be a manifest violation of public justice.

We direct, therefore, that *Quay-lung* be divested of all dignities and employments whatsoever, that *Le-pao* shall be substituted as the temporary vice-roy of *Se-chuen*, and that he shall examine into the offences of *Quay-lung*, and give us notice of the result. The said *Quay-lung* shall, meanwhile, be strictly confined to the prison of *Ching-tu-fu*, the capital of *Se-chuen*, and his three sons divested of their respective dignities and employments. *Khin-tse.*

XIII.

5th and 6th of the 4th Moon of the 5th year of Kia King. } April 28th and 29th, 1800.

Report of the General *Te-lin-tay*, Commander of the Imperial Forces in the Provinces of *Se-chuen* and *Shen-see*.

I HAVE already had the honour to state to your Majesty the many severe conflicts which have taken place between

the troops under my command, and the five columns of the rebels that had gained a passage across the river; and have at present to communicate the complete victory which we have finally obtained over them, having taken alive seventeen of their principal officers, and a female, named *Kuo-shy*, the wife of the late general. The strength of the rebels who had crossed the river, which, apparently, consisted of about 20,000 men, is so considerably reduced by the number that have been killed, dispersed, or captured, that scarcely 3000 remain in arms against your Majesty's forces.

Large bodies of the unfortunate inhabitants, who had been forced to join and accompany the rebels, are continually dispersing to the cities, towns, villages, or country places to which they respectively belong.

In consequence of your Majesty's gracious manifesto, from one hundred to four hundred of these people have daily presented themselves at the gates of the camp, for the purpose of obtaining passports that might enable them to return, without interruption, to the peaceful enjoyment of their dwellings and former occupations.

To these persons, pursuant to your Majesty's mandate, I distributed shares of rice, money, and other requisites to facilitate their return, and they all departed, impressed with a grateful sense of your Majesty's goodness and clemency towards them. The enemy being now inclosed between two rivers, in a situation in which there is little reason to fear that they can oppose a successful resistance, or by any means effect their escape, the present moment appears very opportune for an Imperial manifesto, tending

to encourage and exhort the troops to persevere with zeal in the accomplishment of the pacification of these provinces. I may even venture to entertain hopes that this desirable event may take place so soon as to enable the husbandmen to renew, this year, their operations of tilling the ground and sowing the corn, in those districts that have hitherto been the seat of war and desolation.

It was on the 13th of the present moon, about midnight, that the scouts of our army brought intelligence that the rebels were collected in considerable force at *Ly-Kia-pin* and *She-men*, both of which are in the vicinity of *Lien-cheu*.

I then hastened to take the field; and having advanced with the army, in a direction corresponding with the information received concerning the position of the enemy, we found ourselves opposed, in the first instance, by a body of about 3000 men, who had the audacity to wave their flags, and raise the most savage clamours at our approach. I then judged it expedient to separate the troops into three divisions, under the subordinate commands of *O-ho-pao*, *O-he-chang-ho*, and *O-che-le-tu*. One of these divisions routed the troops that were embodied on the plain, with the slaughter of about 200 of the rebels; the second successfully engaged the rebels stationed at *Ly-kia-pin*; and the third attacked the camp at *She-men*.

The officer, *Lin-ke-ur-keu*, particularly distinguished himself in this enterprize, having first advanced with the troops to the assault, which he accomplished with great zeal as well as judgment. Having forced the gates of the camp, the soldiers rushed on in a body, and took posses-

sion of the place, while the rebels, who were panic struck by this sudden and unexpected attack, made but little resistance. A thousand of the rebels were killed in this action, 500 lost their lives in attempting to escape over the precipices, and 17 officers, with 1867 of the rebel troops were taken alive. The articles found and taken possession of in the camp, were 243 standards, or flags of different sizes, 3 pieces of cannon, 124 muskets, 3221 small swords, scymetars, or other weapons of that description, and upwards of 680 horses; all the wounded, who were very numerous, were likewise found in the camp, so that, upon this occasion, not one of the rebels escaped death or captivity.

[After stating the confession of the rebel leaders who had been captured, the General *Te-lin-tay* proceeds to observe, that on account of the artful manœuvres and variety of stratagems practised by the rebels, he deems it his duty, notwithstanding the late prosperous events, to proceed against the rebels with the same precaution and circumspection as if fortune had proved less favourable.]

The rebel leaders, mentioned above, have been put to death in torments, pursuant to my orders, and 600 of the rebels, who have been captured, will be beheaded without delay; 1300 of the country people who fell into our hands, and appeared to have been forcibly detained by the rebels, have been dismissed to their respective homes, with presents of money and rice, in order to support them during their journey.

With regard to the wife of the late rebel leader, *Chin-te-fung*, her sex might have claimed our indulgence, but

as she wore mourning for her husband, and had the audacity to lead the troops to the attack against the Imperial army, having a standard bearing an inscription, in large letters, "Revenge for my husband's wrongs," she can no longer have any title to our compassion, and has, therefore, been ordered to execution with the other rebels.

[After some further observations on the actual state of the rebellion, and prosecution of the war in future, the General *Te-lin-tay* concludes his address with recommending to the Emperor's notice those officers who had distinguished themselves, by their good conduct, in the late engagements.]

IMPERIAL REPLY.

We have read your report with great satisfaction, and shall speedily issue our orders accordingly. *Khin-tse.*

XIV.

21st and 22d of the 4th Moon of the 5th year of Kia King. } May the 15th and 16th, 1800.

IMPERIAL EDICT.

The soldiers and officers of the militia (provincial levies) of the province of *Yun-nan*, having distinguished themselves by their activity in the war against the *Meaohe* rebels, it is ordered, that the supreme tribunals at *Pekin* do enquire into the merits of each individual, and grant promotions accordingly. Also, in remuneration of the exertions and vigorous administration of the Viceroy of *Yun-nan*, *Shu-lin*, it is our pleasure to grant him

the title of *Tay-tse-tay-pao*, or guardian of the children of the Emperor. *Khin-tse.*

XV.

21st and 22d of the 4th Moon of the 5th year of Kia King. } May the 15th and 16th, 1800.

IMPERIAL EDICT.

THE names of the Vice-roy of *Yun-nan* and of the Lieutenant-General of the province being pronounced alike, although differently written, some confusion may arise therefrom; it is therefore ordered, that the Lieutenant-General *Shu-lin* do change his name to *Shu-ching*. *Khin-tse.*

XVI.

21st and 22d of the 4th Moon of the 5th year of Kia King. } May 15th and 16th, 1800.

IMPERIAL EDICT.

THE ministers and great officers of state, in council assembled, having capitally convicted *King-gan*, late Vice-roy of *Ho-nan*, and *Yung-pao*, late General of the Imperial army in the province of *Hoo-pe*; they have submitted to our sanction a sentence of decapitation, and that the execution thereof should take place without delay. The cowardice and misconduct of these officers fully justify the sentence recommended by the council; yet, as a considerable time has elapsed since the events took place upon which they have been found guilty, and some palliative circumstances have intervened, we resolve to grant a respite until the usual season for capital executions in

the autumn; and, therefore, direct that *King-gan* and *Yung-pao* be remanded to prison until that period. *Khin-tse.*

XVII.

21st and 22d of the 4th Moon of the 5th year of Kia King. } May the 15th and 16th, 1800.

IMPERIAL EDICT.

WHEN the rebellion of *Pe-lien-kiao* first arose in the province of *Hoo-pe*, the General *Yung-pao* commanded in that country, and for some time had the direction of one of the Imperial armies. The head quarters of the rebels were at *Chung-siang*. The passes to the southward, south-eastward and south-westward were ably defended by the officer *Ming-leang*, with a small army of about 3000 men. To the northward, *Yung-pao* was stationed with a body of upwards of 9000 troops, but the rebels took their course in that direction, notwithstanding the superiority of his forces, having met with an obstinate resistance from the southern posts, though maintained by fewer numbers. The northern army, on the contrary, under *Yung-pao*, seemed entirely incapable of withstanding the progress of the rebels, whom they suffered to advance without opposition, and to destroy with fire and sword the district through which they passed. To this unparalleled supineness and neglect, all the subsequent havoc and devastation may be ascribed, to which the province was exposed for the two succeeding years; these fatal consequences certainly render the crime of *Yung-pao* still more unpardonable.

At this time *King-gan* was the Viceroy of the adjoining province of *Ho-nan*, and possessed a considerable force under his command, fully adequate to the defence of the province, had he been competent or willing to have undertaken it; instead of which, the province was left wholly unprotected on his part, except by a few inconsiderable detachments, that were not capable of rendering any material service. *King-gan* himself was content to occupy, with his army, in a pusillanimous manner, only such stations as the rebels did not judge expedient to molest.

The people willingly offered every supply and assistance which the army, in its march, might require; but this aid the Viceroy disdained to receive, and lost thereby most notably the confidence of the inhabitants.

The troops, with all the officers, civil and military, were inactive and in suspense, for want only of his commands. Some officers of rank in the province even conjured him, upon their knees, to lead them to battle, but their entreaties were made in vain. His conduct inflamed them against him to a high degree, and one of them actually ventured to accuse him before the Supreme Criminal Court at *Pekin;* but the Viceroy, by recriminating upon that individual as turbulent and seditious, baffled his attempt.

The rebels, in the meanwhile, spread themselves over an unprotected province. Some, moreover, passed the boundaries, and penetrated into the province of *Shensee,* while another party forded the *Han-Kiang,* in order to invade the province of *Se-chuen.* It is now four years that these rebels have been ravaging and laying

waste many districts of that province, and they are not to this day, entirely subdued. Thus, through the original neglect and supineness of *King-gan*, have our armies been exhausted with hard service, the revenues of the state consumed, and the people fatally injured.

When *King-gan* was at last brought to justice, and tried by the supreme criminal tribunal, so that his guilt became manifest and incontestable, he did not hesitate to make a confession, in terms nearly similar to those of the above statement.

If guilt, accompanied with such peculiar aggravations, is permitted to escape with impunity, what means or expedients can be devised to retain the officers of government in their duty and obedience!

With regard to *Yung-pao*, his crime being similar and cotemporaneous, we deem it expedient that these two officers should be confronted and re-examined, in order to ascertain whether they had been actuated by any mutual influence or connection. *Khin-tse.*

XVIII.

23d and 24th of the 4th Moon of the 5th year of Kia-King. } May the 17th and 18th, 1800.

Report of the General *Te-lin-tay*, Commander of the Imperial Forces in the Provinces of *Se-chuen* and *Shen-see.*

In continuation of my account of the operations of your Majesty's forces, it is my duty at present to state the engagement that took place at the banks of the *Tung-ho*; the number of the enemy killed, wounded, and

taken on that occasion, among whom were twelve officers; and the various circumstances that ensued thereon; all of which I have already communicated express to the General *Le-pao*, and the Viceroy *Quay-lung*. After their last defeat, the rebels having retired and collected their forces at about ten leagues distance, I used the utmost diligence in the pursuit with the troops under my command: many more were killed or taken prisoners, while great numbers also laid down their arms, and sought for mercy.

On the 18th instant, the army arrived at the village of *Foo-tsun*, when information was received that the rebels were principally collected upon the high road, from *Yu-lin-chin* to *Tu-shun-see*. I then selected a few hundred men to reconnoitre the position of the enemy, and at the same time requested, in the advices which I dispatched to the Viceroy *Quay-lung*, that boats might be collected in places of security, along the banks of the river, and the whole line placed in a state of defence.

The rebels now bent their course towards the river, and a very favourable opportunity seemed to offer itself for surrounding them, and at once annihilating their force in this quarter. I rejoiced much at this circumstance, and, having sent on a small detachment, almost immediately followed with the rest of the army.

On the evening of the 19th, several divisions of the army had come up with the enemy, but a part of the troops of the rebels immediately found means of crossing the river in boats, while the rest stood their ground, and gave us battle. The rebels being opposed with great spirit, and with a brisk fire of musketry on our side, they

soon gave way, and their ranks being broken through, they were totally defeated. Six or seven hundred of the rebels were drowned in attempting to ford the river, and the rest were killed or taken.

Being now desirous of pursuing those who had previously succeeded in crossing the river, I hastened with the army to the usual ferry, early on the following morning; but, contrary to my expectations, the magistrates of the district had neglected to collect boats, or provide any other conveniences for the passage of the army, so that for the present those rebels were enabled to escape in that direction, unmolested, and the imperial army was materially retarded in its operations. This event grieved and irritated me beyond measure, and I immediately issued very severe edicts and reprimands, such as were prompted by the occasion; and I recommended, at the same time to the Viceroy *Quay-lung*, to order an immediate prosecution of the offenders, whose neglect had occasioned this delay.

The magistrates, being awed by the decisive measures which I pursued, assisted, to the utmost of their power, in procuring rafts, upon which the army at last succeeded in crossing the river, and landed at *Tay-hoi-tsun*, having previously, in a suitable manner, disposed of the country people, and the other prisoners, whom we had at different times liberated from the hands of the rebels.

The next position which was occupied by the army in its progress, was at *She-tsa-tsun*, where we understood that the rebels, after crossing the river, had immediately separated into two parties, one of which fled towards

Lin-shu-tse, and the other had encamped at *Yung-foo-yuen*, on the high road to *Ching-tu-fu*, the capital, which latter route was favourable to their progress, as it was not intersected by, but lay between, the two rivers.

It appeared, however, from the deposition of some of the country people, that the intention of the rebels was ultimately to pass the *Kia-lin-Kiang*, the defence of which river would, therefore, become important. With this, as well as other views, I detached a small party of three or four hundred men to re-inforce the army of the General *Le-pao*, to whom I sent, at the same time, full information of the present situation of the army in this quarter.

Having, from experience, found that little confidence could be placed in the magistrates of the district, I devolved the care of fortifying the banks of the river, and providing necessaries for the army, chiefly to a division of about 2000 men, which I detached for that purpose, and proceeded with the main body of the army, myself, to *King-foo-yuen*. The scouts now reported that the rebels of the first division had retreated still further, and that the second division had laid siege to our four military stations at *Ching-ho*, *Tay-ho*, *Yin-ho*, and *Yin-yue*. From all accounts it appeared that the principal force of the enemy was lodged at *Sin-tien-tse*; but while the attack was made on them in that quarter, it appeared indispensibly necessary also to relieve the siege of the four military stations. For this purpose, I separated the troops into two principal divisions; the first commanded by *Ta-le-chin-go*, &c. &c. and the other by *Che-chang-go*, &c. &c. and, having made other arrangements

that appeared necessary, I proceeded, with the larger division, against the head quarters of the enemy at *Sin-tien-tse*, and forced their lines, at the very moment when the rebels were regaling themselves with an unusual entertainment. The attack being sudden and unexpected, they were wholly unprepared to receive us, and a general rout and slaughter soon ensued. Five or six hundred of the rebels were killed, and the rest retreated to a very strong position at *Tong-yu*, from whence they kept up a brisk fire with their muskets, and for some time succeeded in keeping our troops at bay, though at the peril of their lives.

Considerable bodies of the rebels then descended from the hills and joined their companions. The action became very general, and after a long and desperate engagement, victory declared itself in favour of the Imperial troops; the numbers of the enemy who were ultimately killed or taken prisoners were immense, and I am sorry to add, that the extreme urgency of the case did not permit me to distinguish between the innocent and the guilty, in the general slaughter that ensued.

I did not, however, omit this opportunity of proclaiming your Majesty's promise of pardon to such of the inhabitants of the province as had been forced or seduced into an association with the rebels, and who should immediately lay down their arms, and submit themselves to the mercy of their sovereign; above 2000 persons have availed themselves thereof, and have quitted the standard of rebellion.

During these proceedings, the other division of the Imperial forces, which I had detached for the purpose

of raising the blockade of the four military stations, first directed their march towards *Ching-ho* and *Tay-ho*, which they found reduced to the last extremity, and ready to surrender, though the actual number of assailants that had surrounded each of these stations, did not exceed 1000 men. These rebels were soon put to flight by our troops, and above 100 of them were killed in the charge. The rebels who had laid siege to the forts at *Yin-ho* and *Yin-yu*, then perceiving that the principal body of their troops had been driven from their head quarters at *Sin-tien-tse*, and the others obliged to relinquish the position they had taken before *Chung-ho* and *Tay-ho*, immediately raised the blockade of *Yin-ho* and *Yin-yu*, and retired previous to the arrival of our troops. The inhabitants of the neighbouring country, who had taken refuge, and were blockaded, in these four stations, amounted to between 10 and 20,000 persons, and they all gratefully acknowledged, that they owed their deliverance to your Majesty's gracious interposition. Among these persons we perceived many who were not of the lowest class, and even some graduates and respectable old men; to all of these I gave the utmost consolation in their difficulties, and allowed them those articles of subsistence or convenience of which they stood most in need. I likewise divided among them the arms and ammunition which we had lately taken from the rebels, that they might be better able to provide for their own defence in future.

It was now of some importance to ascertain the precise situation and rank of those rebel leaders whom we had apprehended; how many of them had been killed, and how

many of any note still kept the field. These particulars, as far as circumstances would admit, have been ascertained by the confession of the rebels that have been apprehended, together with the depositions of the neighbouring inhabitants. In the successive engagements related above, we have taken from the enemy above 1200 horses and mules, 200 bullocks, or oxen, 5 great guns, above 200 muskets, 2800 swords and scymetars, and 312 stand of great and small flags. Of the people of the country who had been seduced, or obliged to join the rebels, 2200 have laid down their arms, and 1300 have been captured. Those who came from the neighbouring villages we immediately discharged, after giving them necessaries and passports, in order to enable them to return to their homes unmolested. A great part of the remainder we also dismissed after a strict examination.

After crossing the river, 700 of the rebels were captured, among whom 12 were leaders. These latter I immediately sentenced to a painful death, as the law directs.

I have, from time to time, informed the Viceroy *Quay-lung* and the General *Le-pao* of my proceedings, that they might co-operate with me for the general welfare. Considering the richness and fertility of the province, and the mild and easy manners of the inhabitants, which render them peculiarly exposed to the ravages of the enemy, I could not allow myself to relax, night or day, from the pursuit of those disturbers of the public peace.

IMPERIAL REPLY.

"YOUR conduct, indeed, is laudable, and highly con-

solatory to us; wherefore an edict of grace shall immediately be issued. *Khin-tse.*

XIX.

29th and 30th of the 4th Moon of the 5th year of Kia King } May 23d and 24th, 1800.

IMPERIAL EDICT.

WHILE we still occupied a private station, we had no personal knowledge of the magistrate *Quay-lung*, and since the period of our receiving the seals of the empire, he was only presented to us at court last year: we then frequently sent for him, in order to ascertain his abilities: we found much sagacity and propriety in his observations, as well as an apparent rectitude of disposition, together with an ease and fluency of speech, which did not appear to harbour any secret thoughts or evil designs. We, therefore, conferred on him the temporary appointment of one of the presidents of a supreme tribunal, in which office he had an opportunity of making several amendments and alterations. At another time, when he was appointed to the collectorship of the customs in *Fo-kien*, there was a deficiency in the returns to the public revenue of 180,000 ounces of silver, and as it was evident that he was utterly unable to complete the sum above-mentioned, he made a voluntary offering of his houses and possessions, together with half his salary as an equivalent; but we commiserated his distress, and considering, that though employed in a remote province, he had preserved his integrity and disinterestedness, and had neglected his own private emolument in a very laudable manner, we resolved to excuse the payment of 96,000 ounces

of the deficiency; and, moreover, permitted him to retain the houses and other possessions that he had offered.

Some time after, in consequence of the neglect and mismanagement of *Le-pao*, General of the troops in *Se-chuen*, we ordered the removal of that officer, and subjected him to a trial, according to the laws, for his offences, and directed the Viceroy *Ge-le-teng-pao* to take the command of the troops in his stead.

The vice-royalty of *Se-chuen* being thereby vacated, we sent an express to *Quay-lung*, with orders to occupy that situation during the present exigency, and particularly to superintend the military preparation at *Ta-cheu*; but without any express orders to take the command of the troops against the rebels. Upon his being presented to us, previous to his proceeding on this service, we gave him the most particular and minute advice to exert the talents and sagacity of which he was possessed, and to repress, as much as possible, the roughness and intractability of his disposition; and at the same time, we gave him a purse from our side, in order to confer on him an additional honour upon the occasion.

He had not proceeded very far upon his journey, before he sent back an extraordinary courier by express to us, accusing precipitately the civil officers *Yu-tien-te* and others. This circumstance gave us some apprehensions respecting his future conduct, and we forbad him, by an edict, to send extraordinary couriers, except in cases of extreme necessity.

Being arrived at *Ta-cheu*, he disagreed with *Quang-Sing*, the collector of the supplies for the army upon that station, and sent to us repeatedly private reports against

him, which have since appeared to be wholly without foundation. We were aware, indeed, that *Quang-Sing* was a young man of a hasty and violent disposition, for which he had already been reprimanded; but we recollected at the same time, that he had ever been extremely scrupulous and attentive in the execution of his office; so much so, that when an immediate supply of 100,000 ounces of silver was required from the treasury in his department for the exigencies of the state, it was afforded without difficulty; on these considerations, therefore, we could not justify ourselves in enforcing punishment for his venial offences in other respects. *Quay-lung*, however, still persisted in his endeavours to remove this man from his office, instead of duly co-operating with him in providing for the necessities of the army.

On the 12th Moon, the General and Commander-in-chief *Ge-le-teng-pao* understanding that the rebels were in much greater force in the province of *Shen-see* than in that of *Se-chuen*, conceived it no longer prudent for him to remain with his army in the latter; and having consulted, at *Ta-cheu*, with the Vice-roy *Quay-lung*, he left *O-ho-pao* with a detachment of 4000 men under the direction of *Quay-lung* for the defence of *Se-chuen*, and proceeded with the rest of the army to the adjoining province. If *Quay-lung* really felt himself entirely unable and incapable of undertaking so important a charge, and accordingly had declined it, the General *Ge-le-teng-pao* would certainly have nominated some other person, and permitted *Quay-lung* to continue in the department in which he was previously engaged. Though it was not

in the power of the viceroy to have completely extirpated the rebels or made them all prisoners, yet it is manifest that if he had proceeded against them at once, without affording them any interval of repose or delay, the extraordinary and unlooked-for change of fortune would never have been experienced. On the contrary, under pretence of collecting supplies, and completing his preparations, he lost eight days in inaction, in the course of which interval, he neither took the field himself, nor delegated that trust to any other person.

At that time he reported to us in general terms that the rebels had been repulsed and defeated, and that *Tsay-tien-yuen*, one of their leaders, had been taken. His remissness and inactivity were, however, easily discernible, and we issued our positive injunctions that he should take the field against the rebels without further delay. The above report from him was, however, soon followed by a second, wherein he informs us, that, on the 15th, the rebels had forded the river in the shallow parts of it, near *Yuen-sien* and *She-pun-to*, and having landed in a part of the country which they had not before visited, had proceeded to ravage those districts with fire and sword.

Notwithstanding this disastrous intelligence, *Quay-lung* manifested no impatience to pursue and repel the invaders, but only sent against them a detachment of the troops, under the command of *Chu-she-tsi*, and remained himself at some distance, to all appearance wholly intent upon procuring the removal of the civil officer *Quang-sing*, for which purpose he communicated to us the letters that had passed between them, little imagining how much he would have occasion to lament this manifesta-

tion of his anger. The detachment under *Chu-she-tsi* engaged the rebels, but was too inconsiderable to obtain any decisive advantage.

On this occasion we were much inclined to have deposed *Quay-lung*, and to have ordered an enquiry to be made into his conduct, but being unable to find at that time a proper person to substitute in his room, we permitted him to continue in office, and having given him strict injunctions to defend the banks of the *Tong-ho*, we appointed the General *Te-lin-tay*, Commander of the Imperial forces in that province.

The arrival of *Te-lin-tay* was followed by repeated successes, which gave a new aspect to the affairs of *Se-chuen*.

With respect to *Quay-lung*, we admonished him in several consecutive edicts that, upon a vigorous and successful defence of the river *Tong-ho*, his fate would now wholly depend. What more could we say? our tongue is dry and our lips parched with admonishing and reprehending him.

The General *Te-lin-tay* had in the mean while taken prisoners ten of the leaders of the rebels, and rescued from their oppression upwards of 10,000 of the peaceful inhabitants of the country.

Though *Quay-lung* had been nominally deposed for his conduct at the river *Kia-lin-kiang*, we still permitted him to remain in possession of the viceroyalty, and to wear the insignia of the third rank of civil officers. A chastisement truly inconsiderable, and inadequate to his offence; but this is an ill-fated spiritless man, on whom our favour and compassion can have no effect: for, on the

18th of the 3d moon, the rebels effected a passage over the *Tong-ho* river, and landing on the southern shore, once more laid waste that country by fire and sword; thus the three successive victories, obtained by the General *Te-lin-tay*, were rendered abortive and ineffectual.

If we did not now consign over this offender to the punishment which the laws require, it would appear that we sought to screen the errors and misconduct of the man whom we had elevated; nay, we should frustrate all the purposes of the great legislative code which our ancestors established in this empire. But your sovereign is not so indifferent and unable a master.

We have, therefore, deposed *Quay-lung*, and committed him to trial, having specially directed the new Viceroy *Le-pao*, and our Envoy Extraordinary *Cheu-hing-tay*, to investigate the circumstances of his guilt, and report to us the result.

It has since appeared, that the unjust accusation of *Chin-san*, the inspector of the powder magazines, might be added to the catalogue of his offences, but the ingenious defence which he has made to that charge, has involved it for the present in uncertainty.

It is now our pleasure that he, the said *Quay-lung*, be remanded to the prison at *Ching-tu-fu*, the capital of the province of *Se-chuen*, and that a council be immediately convened at Pekin, to deliberate on the charges whereof he is convicted, and to pronounce sentence thereon, as the laws direct; consisting of *Yu-ching* and *Ching-ching*, princes of the blood, the Ministers of State, Field Marshals, and the Presidents of the six Supreme Tribunals. *Khin-tse.*

XX.

29th and 30th of the 4th Moon of the 5th year of Kia King. } May 23d and 24th, 1800.

IMPERIAL EDICT.

THE princes of the blood and great officers of state, have deliberated on the crimes of *Quay-lung*, late viceroy of the province of *Se-chuen*, and have pronounced a sentence of decapitation, and that he be executed immediately, in the province of *Se-chuen*. We are of opinion that this sentence is perfectly equitable, and worthy to be ratified: For *Quay-lung*, having been appointed by our especial grace and favour to the temporary vacancy of the viceroyalty of *Se-chuen*, is certainly more deeply criminal than *King-gan*, the late viceroy of *Ho-nan*, or *Yung-pao*, late lieutenant-general in the same province, upon whom a similar sentence has recently been pronounced.

And also, with respect to *Ho-quen*, late minister of state, though he was one of the chosen servants of our royal father, yet, as he had usurped the government, and perverted the laws, we delivered him over to trial and condemnation, and he finally received sentence of death, with the permission to be his own executioner.

But *Quay-lung* derives his elevation only from ourself, and has never ranked among the great officers of state; what, therefore, should incline us to gloss over his crimes, or protect him from punishment?

The opinion of the judges, that *Quay-lung* ought to be executed on a scaffold at *Ching-tu-fu*, is extremely reason-

able; but, as at present the rebel chiefs who have been captured, *Tsay-tien-yuen* and *Chin-te-fung*, are about to suffer death in torments at the same spot, and as *Quay-lung* had formerly held the eminent and respectable station of viceroy of the said province, it is to be apprehended that such an association might be injurious to the honour and credit of the administration of the empire, and that the ignominious fate of the chief officer of the province might dispose the people to despise and neglect the other magistrates.

Quay-lung being at present in confinement in the prison of *Ching-tu-fu*, the officers *Yang-tung* and *Sien-foo* are hereby directed to remove him immediately, under an escort, to Pekin, and to take all necessary precautions to prevent his putting himself to death, from the apprehension of impending punishment. Any neglect that may be shewn to this order will be rigorously examined into, and punished accordingly.

The council of princes, and great officers of state, are hereby desired to reiterate their investigation into the nature of the offences of *Quay-lung*, and having conferred thereupon with the tribunal of crimes, they are to inform us of the final result of their deliberations. *Khin-tse.*

XXI.

3d and 4th of the Intercalary 4th Moon, 5th year of Kia King. } May 27th and 28th, 1800.

Offering of *Leu-yeu-zhin*, vice-president of the tribunal of public works, and late *Foo-yuen*, or sub-viceroy in the province of *Quang-tong:*

5 silk and ivory worked fans.
15 large ivory worked round fans.
100 pieces of deep coloured grass cloth.
100 pieces of straw coloured ditto.
100 pieces of *Tsing-ching* ditto.
100 pieces of light coloured grass ditto.
100 pieces of plain ditto.
100 pieces of *Wha-kee* ditto.
4 small looking-glasses for palanquins.
10 small European mirrors, and
9 bottles of snuff.

The foregoing offering has been accepted by his Imperial Majesty.

XXII.

27th and 28th of the Intercalary 4th Moon, 5th year of Kia-King. } May 27th and 28th, 1800.

OFFERING of *Kee-king*, viceroy of the provinces of *Quang-tong* and *Quang-see*:

5 large fans.
100 small fans.
5 ornamental fans.
2 boxes of scented beads.
2 pieces of European Porcelain.
9 boxes of dried aromatic flowers.
100 pieces of dark coloured grass cloth.
100 ditto of light coloured ditto.
100 ditto of plain ditto.
100 ditto of ivory coloured ditto.
100 ditto of *Tse-ching* ditto.
100 ditto of flowered silk.
9 bottles of snuff.

The above offering has been accepted by his Imperial Majesty.

XXIII.

6th and 7th of the 5th Moon of the 5th year of Kia King. } June 28th and 29th, 1800.

IMPERIAL EDICT.

KEE-KING, viceroy, and *Kee-shan*, collector of the customs of the province of *Quang-tong*, have reported, that "*Puan-khe-qua*, and others, and *Wun-yun-se*, and others, merchants for the foreign and salt trade, have petitioned for leave to bear a share of the expense of remunerating his Majesty's troops at the close of the campaign; for which purpose, they earnestly desire to lay before his Majesty the sum of 300,000 ounces of silver, being the remainder of a former offer, which government had declined to accept. The patriotic and honourable motives of the above request, forbid us to conceal it from the notice of your Imperial Majesty." By a former report of the viceroy of Canton, we were informed of the offer of the merchants of the foreign and salt trade, amounting to 500,000 ounces, which was made upon the occasion of honorary distinctions having been granted to them.

We then notified, by an edict, our intention of accepting 200,000 ounces, excusing them the payment of 300,000 ounces,* the remainder of their offer.

It appears, however, by the above report now made to us by the viceroy, that they have repeated their request of

* 100,000*l.* sterling.

leave to complete the payment of the sum formerly offered. We cannot, certainly, any longer refuse our consent to their desires in this respect, and therefore permit them to put into execution what they have so laudably proposed.

For the convenience of the merchants, leave is also granted to them to borrow the sum specified from the Provincial Treasury, to be repaid in the course of six years. The viceroy shall also address an exact report to the Supreme Council, of the names of the merchants, and the sums contributed, that due notice may be taken of it, for the encouragement of others. *Khin-tse.*

XXIV.

12th and 13th of the 5th Moon of the 5th year of Kia King. } July 4th and 5th, 1800.

IMPERIAL EDICT.

AMONG the officers and volunteers who have been removed from different fixed military stations and have joined our armies, many have been slain in the field of battle; the Supreme Tribunals are therefore hereby directed to take into consideration the rewards and consolation respectively due to their families, and to determine what hereditary titles should be granted, to which their sons should succeed. We further direct, that after their sons shall have been presented to us at court, they shall receive commissions to serve in the body-guard of the viceroys of their respective provinces, in order to afford them the best opportunity of perfecting themselves in the military art. We have, however, considered, that

in extensive provinces, the residence of their families may be more or less remote from the provincial metropolis; and that these young men, if employed in the immediate service of the viceroy, may, in some cases, be separated from their widowed mothers, and aged grandfathers and grandmothers, who would have a claim to their personal assistance, and whom, if in poverty, their pay would ill enable them to provide for, if at a remote distance.

As the officers now recently deceased, have fallen victims to their patriotic exertions, and have died in the actual service of their sovereign, we cannot but extend our favour and protection to all the branches of their surviving families. It is, therefore, our pleasure, that among those who have obtained honours on account of their deceased relations, such as inhabit the more remote districts of each province, shall serve and receive their military instruction at the stations that are nearest to their respective homes, paying, however, an annual visit to the chief city of the province, for the purpose of having their conduct and improvement in the military art submitted to the viceroy's examination.

After the expiration of three years, due information shall be given to the Supreme Tribunals, for the purpose of their presenting these persons to us at Court; the favours and appointments which we shall then distribute amongst them, will clearly evince our attachment and partiality to the descendants of all such officers as have serevd us with fidelity. *Khin-tse.*

XXV.

28th and 29th of the 5th Moon of the 5th year of Kia King. } July 20th and 21st, 1800.

IMPERIAL EDICT.

NA-YEN-TCHING* possesses in outward appearance some talents, but is deficient in judgment, and is tardy and undecisive when matters of importance are laid before him, and yet does not attend to the words of others, but is satisfied of the propriety of his own opinion. The few good qualities which he may be allowed to possess, are insufficient to cover his misdeeds. By a strict execution of the laws, he should have been deprived of all his dignities, and banished to *Elee*, as an expiation of his offences; but, because all the other relatives of *A-koui* have already been sent into banishment, during this last half year, for different causes, we cannot patiently endure the idea that not one should remain to perpetuate the name and family of that ancient and faithful minister.

But as *Na-yen-tching* can neither acquit himself with credit or success in the field, or with propriety or decision in council, he is an unprofitable and useless servant of the State, whom it is indispensibly requisite that we should remove from every office and employment of importance; we hereby, therefore, deprive him of his office as president at one of the Supreme Tribunals, as a general in the army, and as a dignitary of the Peacock's Feather; but, as a mark of our especial grace and favour,

* Since restored to his rank, and appointed Viceroy of Canton and *Quang-see* in 1805.

we grant him the rank of a vice-president of the Imperial College; and if he conduct himself eight years without blame in that situation, we shall permit him to receive the salary that is usually attached to it.

The state and efficiency of our military force has been greatly improved of late; able-bodied men have been selected, and furnished with adequate supplies of stores of every kind; *Ge-le-teng-pao,* and the other experienced generals in command, are fully competent to accomplish our design of bringing the war to a conclusion in the course of the present campaign; we forbid, therefore, for the future, any civil or military officer, excepting those peculiarly distinguished by the title of Great Officers of State, to present to us any observations or remonstrances on the state of the army and operations of the campaign, as such communications have the effect of raising injurious suspicions and erroneous ideas, highly detrimental to the cause. *Khin-tse.*

XXVI.

9th day of the 6th Moon of the 5th year of Kia King. } July 31st, 1800.

IMPERIAL EDICT.

We have respectfully examined the records of our imperial ancestor *Kang-hee,* in which we find the following edict, addressed to the Tribunal of Arms:

"When this empire was first established on its present foundations, martial laws and military discipline were observed with rigour and precision. The enemies of the State were attacked with unanimity, and driven from their

fastnesses. The operations of each campaign, together with the merits and demerits of the respective commanders, were faithfully and exactly reported, without any disgraceful evasions, or credit to themselves unworthily assumed. But at present, when an army is sent on any military service, every report that is made of their operations contains an account of a victory, of rebels dispersed at the first encounter, driven from their stations, killed and wounded to a great amount, or to the amount of some thousands, or, in short, that the rebels slain were innumerable.

"These, and similar reports, are made to us by the commanders, in the hope of extending the fame of their own achievements, and procuring presents and promotion. We, on the contrary, hereby issue our strict injunctions to all general officers, viceroys, governors, and colonels, to report to us, with sincerity and a scrupulous attention to truth and precision, the accounts of their future military operations; and we further declare, that should these exaggerations and claims of undeserved credit, recur in their future reports, the utmost rigour of the military law shall be exerted in punishing the offence."

In consequence of the desire of our imperial ancestor *Kang-hee*, to restore the vigour and promptitude of military discipline, we indeed find, at various times since the establishment of our empire, the most respectable instances of valour, sincerity, and diligence, among our Tartar officers. By these, the three foreign tribes were subdued, and the pacification of the seven provinces accomplished. *Tu-hay* and *Chang-hung*, and other generals, manifested an unshaken fidelity and determined valour;

which, when accompanied by activity and diligence, can scarcely fail of success. Military operations were accordingly at that time faithfully reported, and all attempts at extenuation or amplification effectually checked.

At present, the *Pe-lien-kiao* are merely a turbulent portion of our own people, the facility of restoring order among whom, compared with the difficulty of subduing the three foreign tribes, is as wide asunder as heaven and earth.

Had we, at the head of our troops, generals equal to *Tu-hay* and *Chang-yung*, the present contest would not remain long undecided. Five years are now elapsed since our troops have been employed on this service, and they have not yet been able to accomplish the object of their enterprize.

Were the present leaders of our armies sent against the three foreign tribes, how would they be able to complete the conquest by a given day! They indeed make a great show and ostentation of their strength and activity, though, in fact, they are inferior in every thing to the officers who established our empire. And, with respect to the faithlessness of their representations, and their reports of victories and captures, merely with a view of acquiring credit and rewards, the difference is still more remarkable. We have frequently issued our orders and admonitions, that victories or defeats should be reported to us with equal fidelity, notwithstanding which, this corrupt custom still prevails; and it only remains for us to oppose the evil by stronger prohibitions and severer penalties.

In future, therefore, a strict enquiry will be made into

the military operations of each department; and if the most trifling circumstance in their reports is found to be false or misrepresented, if they follow the steps of their predecessors, their offences will be referred to the examination of the Tribunal of Arms, whose sentence pronounced against them will be immediately presented for our approbation. And, though there may be some offences which the tribunal is not competent to investigate, yet, as the events of a campaign cannot easily be concealed from the eyes and ears of individuals, the generals may rest assured, that we shall proceed with the same rigour when we become acquainted with their misconduct by private communications.

These General Orders are more particularly addressed to the General Officers commanding our armies in *Shensy*, *Kan-soo*, and *Hou-quang*, as well as to the viceroys and sub-viceroys of those provinces. *Khin-tse.*

XXVII.

24th and 25th of the 6th Moon of the 5th year of Kia King. } Aug. 15th and 16th, 1800.

IMPERIAL EDICT.

THE power residing with the sovereign, and emanating from the throne over the whole community, is displayed chiefly in the distribution of rewards and punishments. The exercise of this power ought to be guided by an exact impartiality, together with a scrupulous attention to the public good, and to the exclusion of private interests. No prejudice or extraneous motive should inter-

fere with the consideration of the intrinsic merits of the individual who becomes the object of this exertion of sovereign authority.

Excessive liberality in rewards, is often productive of ingratitude from those upon whom the obligation is conferred; extreme severity in punishments is disheartening and oppressive.

On the other hand, if merit fails to meet with its reward, a due encouragement to others is withheld. If a guilty action escape with impunity, every principle of correction and amendment is abandoned.

These maxims are ever to be kept in view; but more especially in military affairs, wherein the omission of rewards and punishments, of the most exemplary kind, would put every thing to risk, from the errors and misconduct of those who are employed. These dangers are indeed of an alarming magnitude. For, if a superior officer, who thus violates the laws, is suffered to escape with impunity, what motive is there held out to excite the spirit of others, and to induce them to expose their lives? But, above all, when we see myriads of our subjects, our children, perishing in consequence; their scattered and unburied remains arresting our attention; must not this touch and rend the heart of their father and their sovereign! Shall we, then, testify a desire to protect and skreen from punishment an unworthy officer who is the author of such great calamities! The imperial line of *Ta-tsing* has not given to the empire a master so unable, so unworthy. In order to the expiation, therefore, of the crimes whereof the late viceroy *Quay-lung* now stands

convicted, an extraordinary Edict, declaratory of our pleasure thereon, shall shortly be made public.* *Khin-tse.*

XXVIII.

6th and 7th days of the 10th Moon of the 5th year of Kia King. } Nov. 22d and 23d, 1800.

IMPERIAL EDICT.

LEE-SUON, King of *Corea*, after having held the reins of government upwards of twenty years, during which period he ever maintained the integrity of his administration and fidelity of his allegiance to us, as well as proved unfailing in the transmission to us of the customary presents from his kingdom, lately fell ill, and is now dead. We receive the intelligence with deep concern, and approve of the usual sacrifices and oblations being made to his memory. We have already declared our pleasure thereon, in an extraordinary edict, directing that the same should be put into execution, according as the laws of our empire have specified. The further consideration of the address made to us on this subject, we refer to the cognizance of the proper tribunal. *Khin-tse.*

XXIX.

15th and 16th of the 12th Moon of the 5th year of Kia King. } Jan. 29th and 30th, 1801.

THE *Fou-yuen* or Sub-viceroy *Pe*, of the province of *Shan-see*, presents his respectful address regarding the transportation of gunpowder and shot.

* This edict was shortly after issued; and it directed that *Quay-ling* should be permitted to be his own executioner; that is, should be privately strangled in prison. A translation of it is given in the Appendix to the Translation of the Chinese Penal Code.

I have to inform his Imperial Majesty that, on arriving at the city of *Sou-cheou*, after visiting the different garrisons in the district of *Ta-tung-tsin*, on the 21st day of the 11th moon, I received an official communication from *Lu*, the *Fou-yuen* of *Shen-see*, (late *Fou-yuen* of *Quang-tong*,) stating that the numerous engagements which had taken place in the borders of his province, in the attack and pursuit of the rebels in different directions, had caused an extraordinary consumption of gunpowder and shot, exceeding what the magazines of the province could supply. He therefore requested that a quantity, amounting to 50,000 *kin** of gunpowder, and 20,000 *kin* of leaden shot, should be supplied from the different garrisons in *Shan-see*, and transported to the province of *Shen-see* with the utmost expedition. I considered, upon receiving the above communication, that gunpowder and shot, being articles of indispensable necessity in carrying on the operations of the army, it was absolutely incumbent on me to lose no time in forwarding the required supply. I have accordingly ordered 50,000 *kin* of gunpowder to be supplied from the garrisons of *Tay-yuen-tsin*, and 20,000 *kin* of leaden shot from those of *Ta-tung-tsin*, both on the borders of *Shen-see*, and which are to be transmitted to the magazines in that province with the utmost expedition, under the care of some trusty officers whom I have selected for the purpose.

I have further directed the Treasurer, or *Pu-ching-see*, to draw up an account of the value of those articles, together with that of the vehicles and the expense of trans-

* A *kin* is one third more than the English pound.

portation, that I may report the whole for the joint adjustment of the Tribunals of Arms, Finances, and Public Works, (*Ping-pu, Hu-pu,* and *Kung-pu*). This transaction I have now the honour respectfully to lay before his Majesty.

Imperial Reply.—"Let this be referred to the cognizance of the proper tribunals."

XXX.

15th and 16th of the 12th Moon of the 5th year of Kia-King. } Jan. 29th and 30th, 1801.

THE Viceroy *Yue,* of the province of *Fo-kien,* respectfully presents his report, to communicate to his Imperial Majesty, that *Siao-wen-kay,* chief ambassador from the kingdom of *Lieu-kieu,* after having taken his leave at court, has received the intelligence of a calamity having befallen his family, which will oblige him to renounce his public employments.

The chief ambassador *Siao-wen-kay,* and the second ambassador *Ly-tien-yuen,* returned to *Fo-kien* on the 4th day of the 11th moon, and set out on the following day to return to the court of their nation, together with the commissioners from his Imperial Majesty. It appears that on their arrival at the city of *Ku-tien-sien,* on the 7th of the same month, they were met by messengers arrived express from the family of the chief ambassador, to communicate to him the intelligence of the death of his mother, which event had taken place on the 20th day of the 8d moon. His duty as a son obliging him to resign his public situation and employments, he will deliver over

the imperial packet, and his other charges, to the second ambassador, and will proceed immediately to his own country, to perform the duties of his mourning.

These circumstances being communicated to me by the governor of *Ku-tien-sien*, I made enquiry on the subject, and finding the fact to be as above stated, have given regular information of it to the Supreme Tribunals, and respectfully wait for the declaration of his Majesty's gracious pleasure on the occasion.

Imperial Reply.—"We know it." *Khin-tse.*

XXXI.

4th and 5th of the 4th Moon of the 6th year of Kia King. } May 14th and 15th, 1801.

IMPERIAL EDICT.

On our return from the imperial tombs, which we visited on the occasion of quitting our habits of mourning, we met with a man on horseback in the district of *Whang-ma-tien*, who galloped to and fro in our presence with great apparent haste. The officers in waiting having apprehended the offender, and investigated the circumstances, it was found that he was an attendant on *Mien-ko*, prince of *Tchuong-ching*. Animadverting on such extraordinary and irregular behaviour, we direct that, in the first place, the offender shall be committed to the custody of the Tribunal of Crimes, where he shall be punished with the bamboo, according to the law against insolent and unruly conduct in the Imperial presence; and that, secondly, *Mien-ko* shall resign his post as a general in the army, and member of the Supreme Council, but shall

continue to enjoy the rank and title of Prince of *Tchuong-ching*, in token of our indulgence towards him. We, however, abstain from a final decision of the affair, till we receive the result of the deliberations of the *Tsoung-zin-foo*, or Tribunal for affairs affecting the Imperial family. *Khin-tse.*

XXXII.

3d and 4th of the 4th Moon of the 6th year of Kia King. } May 14th and 15th, 1801.

IMPERIAL EDICT.

THE marriage of the third Imperial Princess *Ho-je*, being appointed to take place in the ensuing spring, the Tribunal of Mathematics is ordered to select a fortunate day for the celebration of this event. *Khin-tse.*

XXXIII.

17th and 18th of the 4th Moon of the 6th year of Kia King. } May 28th and 29th, 1801.

THE Supreme Tribunal for State Affairs humbly addresses his Majesty, and craves a declaration of the imperial pleasure upon the following occasion:

On the 7th instant, and while *Te-ke-le-pu*, an officer in the Red Legion of Tartar Infantry, was in command on duty at the great gate of the palace *Ly-gan-men*, the private soldier *Lieu-foo*, one of the sentinels at that post, apprehended and conveyed into the custody of our tribunal, a Chinese, a native of *Jang-ching-sien*, in the province of *Ho-nan*, named *Chang-sien-tsung*, whom he had surprised in an attempt to gain admittance to the imperial presence: we did not fail immediately to enter into a

rigorous and careful examination of the prisoner, and we registered his confession as follows:

" I am a native of the city of *Jang-ching-sien*, in the province of *Ho-nan*, and inhabit the district of *Puon-chang-tchuong*, under the jurisdiction of the same city. The fatal effects of the rebellion which commenced in the provinces of *Se-chuen* and *Hou-quang* being now felt also in my native province of *Ho-nan*, I have been led to think that the real inducement of the people to join the standard of rebellion, must be the poverty and oppression under which they labour: and that this arises from the large demands of money made upon the viceroys and sub-viceroys during the administration of *Ho-quen*, as they were under the necessity of referring the satisfaction of those demands to the several governors and magistrates, while these were, in like manner, under the necessity of finally extorting the amount from the people, to their daily vexation and impoverishment. If it be therefore wished to subdue this rebellion, let the taxes be reduced in proportion to the ability of the people to pay them, and then their principal inducement to join the rebels will be removed. At the same time, let the graduates who are annually elected to different magistracies, be furnished with a gracious and favourable edict from the Emperor, to be published to the people immediately on entering upon their functions; by these means, the minds of the people will experience such an alteration, that three months will suffice to restore them to a state of harmony and submission: and it will be no longer necessary to pursue a system of extirpation against a rebellion that will expire of its own accord.

"With a view of stating these circumstances, I endeavoured to gain admittance to the imperial presence, but was arrested in the attempt by the officers of justice."

From our examination it appears that the deponent *Chang-sien-tsung*, is one of the low and ignorant peasantry;—wherefore his audacity in presuming to rush into the Imperial hall, in order to state these weak and unsubstantiated assertions, is highly reprehensible and illegal. We therefore request your Majesty's orders for his commitment to trial before the Supreme Criminal Tribunal; we request likewise that the officer *Te-ke-le-pu*, whose prompt attention has arrested the progress of this affair at its commencement, should receive the reward to which his merits may hereafter be deemed entitled, while a present should also be made to the soldier who kept guard, that similar vigilance and good behaviour be encouraged in others.

In order to beg a notification of your Majesty's pleasure, we now respectfully submit this address, and await the decision your Majesty may judge expedient to pronounce.

Imperial Reply.—"Your address will be taken into consideration."

XXXIV.

19th and 20th of the 4th Moon of the 6th year of Kia King. } May 30th and 31st, 1801.

IMPERIAL EDICT.

Our late Minister of State and President of the Tribunal of Public Offices *Shu-lin*, had arrived at an advanced period of life, in the course of which he had ac-

quired a consummate knowledge of the true interests and good government of this empire, and had preserved unblemished throughout, the reputation for justice and fidelity, which had originally gained him our favour.

After having recalled him from the service to which he had been deputed in the frontier provinces, and conferred on him the viceroyalty of the provinces of *Fo-kjen* and *Che-kiang*, we last year promoted him to the viceroyalty of the provinces of *Yun-nan* and *Koui-cheou*, for the purpose of engaging the rebellious people of *Kuo-he*, on which occasion he maintained against them a vigorous and well-conducted campaign; lastly, when the defective and unfinished state of our military operations against the rebels in the province of *Hou-pe*, called for extraordinary exertions, we expressly selected *Shu-lin* to succeed to the vacant viceroyalty of that and the adjoining province of *Hou-nan*. Being fully confident, likewise, of his enterprising spirit and determined courage, in spite of his declining years, now verging to their seventieth, we exhorted him, by repeated edicts, to forbear to expose himself in the foremost ranks, or personally to engage the enemy, but only to continue to direct the operations of the campaign from the head-quarters, and communicate instructions and grant rewards to those who were more immediately upon the seat of war, according as the occasion, and the degree of authority or trust reposed in them might require.

Shu-lin, however, hastened himself to lead our armies to the field, and many times, mounted on his horse, fought and pursued the rebels, through woods and mountains, and other passages of great danger and intricacy.

A fit of illness ensued in consequence of these extraordinary and glorious exertions, and obliged him to request our sanction to a temporary retirement from the seat of war, for the recovery of his health.

We knew that *Shu-lin* would not unnecessarily bring forward his own sufferings as a pretext for evading the duties of his station; and being apprehensive that the restoration of his health was already become doubtful, we immediately issued orders, conveying our express authority for his return by easy journies to our court, and conferring on him the appointment to the Presidency of the Tribunal of Public Offices, and the distinction of Honorary Minister of State.

At the same time, *Meng-chu*, commander of the guard at the gate of the palace *Kan-tsing-men*, received our orders to proceed, in company with a physician of our household, and the two sons of *Shu-lin*, *Yun-mo-che* and *Kie-lang-go*, and to meet him on the road, for the purpose of attending on him, and contributing every necessary assistance towards his recovery.

We are now, however, apprized by a messenger from the officer *Chang-lin*, of the event of the decease of *Shu-lin* on the 9th instant; and that, when, in his last moments, he perceived it to be impossible for him to live until the accomplishment of the task that had been assigned him, namely, the subjugation of the rebels in his province, he ordered that the customary change of apparel after his death should be omitted, and that his body should be interred in the same dress that he had worn in the field, to mark his earnestness, to the last, in the cause.

As *Shu-lin* was an officer of such well-known abilities and approved fidelity, and who had already spent a long and laborious life in our service, we appointed him to the government of *Hou-quang*, with the above express exception against his exposing his person to danger or illness; it is indeed with painful regret we now learn that he is no more.

We therefore decree to *Shu-lin* the posthumous honours of *Tay-tse Tay-pao*, (or guardian of the children of the Emperor,) and the hereditary rank of a *Heou* of the Empire, which shall be enjoyed by his son and heir *Kie-lang-go*.

We likewise direct the officer *Meng-chu*, above mentioned, to superintend the funeral obsequies of the deceased, and, with his two sons, to accompany the bier to Pekin, when further orders shall be issued regarding the same.

It is also enacted, that all the objects of censure that may have been registered against *Shu-lin* shall be passed over without notice; but that all the notices of measures worthy of approbation, undertaken during his administration, shall be carefully extracted from the register and reported to us, that he may be rewarded with all the praise and esteem to which he is entitled. *Khin-tse.*

XXXV.

22d and 23d of the 5th Moon of the 6th year of Kia King. } July 1st and 2d, 1801.

IMPERIAL EDICT.

LEU-YEU-ZHIN, *Fou-yuen* or sub-viceroy of the province of *Shen-see*, has addressed us, charging with wilful

neglect and mismanagement in the treatment and relief of such of the inhabitants as had been rescued from the hands of the rebels, the officer *A-lin-ga*, governor of a city of the third order: and he has suggested that the said governor should be deprived of his rank, and tried for the offence. We readily sanction his request with our approbation; for it is not without the most heartfelt concern that we behold the calamities and fatal effects which the incursions of the rebels have produced among the innocent and peaceful inhabitants of our province of *Shensee*; those who are unwilling to join the rebel standard, being either driven by the rebels from their habitations by a direct attack, or compelled to lead a wandering life, in order to escape them.

In this case, it becomes an indispensable duty to exert every means for their consolation and relief, not only by subduing or dispersing the bodies of the rebels, whenever they may collect, but also by the peaceful restoration to their comforts and employments, of all those who may have been rescued from their hands by the force of our arms.

Our edicts for the general re-establishment of peace and good order have long been promulgated to the magistrates, in their respective districts; but the present is a moment of peculiar urgency, and demands the utmost exertion of their ability both in reducing the rebels, and in relieving the necessities of the people: there should not remain a single individual bereaved of his habitation or subsistence.

It was, therefore, the duty of *A-lin-ga*, the governor of *Pe-ho-sien*, whenever the generals in the field trans-

mitted to his care any of the inhabitants, whom they had rescued from the hands of the rebels, to have selected the most active and able-bodied men, to fill up the regiments of the provisional militia; to have employed others in the various offices to which they were qualified in the service of the magistracy; and finally, to have fed and supplied with necessaries all such persons as circumstances permitted him to restore at once to their families and habitations.

With regard to the wives and daughters of the peasantry, suitable accommodation and subsistence ought to have been provided for them also, until they were claimed and acknowledged by their husbands or relations.

If, after a long delay, none of their connections or relatives appeared in their behalf, then some equitable plan should have been set on foot for their future accommodation and disposal.

The conduct of the said governor, in giving away in marriage these women to his servants and dependants, immediately as they fell into his hands, is indeed contrary to every principle of justice or good order; for when the husbands and relations afterwards appear, what accommodation can then be made, or how are their claims on their wives and daughters, thus distributed, to be satisfied! It is likewise to be seriously apprehended, that the said governor was induced to give away these females to his servants and dependants from some criminal motive of bribery and peculation, to ascertain which, the strictest investigation is requisite; wherefore, it is our pleasure, that *A-lin-ga*, governor of *Pe-ho-sien*, be forthwith deprived of his office and dignity, and committed for trial before the tribunal of the Sub-viceroy *Leu-yeu-zhin*.

Should a corrupt connivance appear to have existed between the governor and his dependants, so as to justify the above suspicions, we desire that the utmost rigour of the law shall be executed against them, without application being made for our further orders. If the case proves of a doubtful nature, the governor, and such attendants as were included in the accusation, shall be deprived of their respective employments, and the result of the investigation reported to us to receive our ultimate decision upon it. *Khin-tse.*

XXXVI.

23d of the 5th Moon of the 6th year of Kia King. } July 3d and 4th, 1801.

IMPERIAL EDICT.

THE gracious protecting Temple of the King of the Dragons, on the mountain *Yu-chun-shan*, has, on every occasion of drought, proved favourable to the prayers we offered up there, according as long since has been duly recorded in our sacred registers.

Immediately after the summer solstice of the present year, a great want of rain was experienced; on which account we were induced, on the 17th instant, again to offer up our prayers and sacrifices in person, at the temple above mentioned. In the course of the very same day a fall of small rain, or dew, was observed, and on the following, the country was relieved by frequent and copious showers.

This further proof of efficacy in granting our requests augments our veneration; and in testimony thereof, we direct that the temple of this propitious divinity shall

receive an additional appellative, and be styled on all future occasions, " The gracious in protecting and efficacious in preserving" the Temple of the King of the Dragons. *Khin-tse.*

XXXVII.

23d and 24th of the 5th Moon of the 6th year of Kia King. } July 3d and 4th, 1801.

IMPERIAL EDICT.

THE Viceroy *Kie*, of the provinces of *Quang-tong* and *Quang-sy*, has represented to us in a late address, that a considerable number of military officers, having been removed from the garrisons and other stations within the provinces of his government, and dispatched on actual service to other parts of the empire, a sufficient number of officers, having the rank of major or captain, does not remain for the command of the particular stations, and the general defence of the two provinces: and he proceeds to request that supernumerary officers be selected from among those of inferior rank, and being found qualified by examination, be appointed for the time being, to hold the situations and commands now left vacant.

We approve of the address, and grant our licence that fifty-three officers who now hold the rank of lieutenant and ensign in the province of *Quang-tong*, may be respectively promoted to the temporary rank of major and captain: and that thirty-eight officers, who hold the rank of lieutenant and ensign, in the province of *Quang-sy*, may receive similar promotion.

The additional rank and employments of the officers

thus promoted shall nevertheless immediately cease, and be of no further effect, upon the return of those who are now engaged in actual service in other provinces, in order that the due proportion of officers of each denomination within those provinces be not unnecessarily infringed upon. *Khin-tse.*

XXXVIII.

6th day of the 11th Moon of the 58th year of Kien-lung. } December, 1793.

IMPERIAL EDICT.*

CHANG-LIN, viceroy of Canton, has reported to us his having accompanied the English Ambassador and suite as far as the borders of the province of *Che-kiang*, during which period, it is stated, the foreigners expressed their sentiments of extreme satisfaction and respect. We further understand, from the Viceroy's report, that the Ambassador, through the medium of the civil and military officers who attended on the embassy, has expressed himself as follows:—"The King, in sending an embassy to this court, was actuated by the purest motives; and previous to our present visit to China, our sovereign intimated to us, that in an interval of a few years after our return from the present expedition, we might again be entrusted

* This and the two following articles, although they do not appear to have been inserted in the Pekin Gazette, are precisely of that class of official documents which are usually found there.

The latter articles contain the *Chinese* account of certain communications, by letters and presents, which took place between the Courts of London and Pekin, in the interval between the two Embassies.

with a similar mission to the Court of Pekin. We are desirous of making an early arrangement on this subject; but, on account of the extreme distance between the two countries, we cannot venture to pronounce the year or month of our probable return with letters and presents for his Imperial Majesty; but, with his Majesty's gracious permission, we shall give due notice thereof, to be communicated by the Viceroy to the court." *

This, indeed, may be admitted, and it is, therefore, our pleasure that the Viceroy *Chang-lin* do communicate to the said ambassador the following reply:

The determination of your Sovereign to send you upon this occasion, from a remote distance across the seas, in order to testify his friendly sentiments, and to offer and receive donations, has proved extremely pleasing to his Imperial Majesty, and his Majesty has returned valuable presents in token of his approbation.

The favours which you have since requested to be granted to you have been refused, not being agreeable to the laws of the empire; but his Imperial Majesty is by no means offended or displeased with you on the occasion.

Since you now inform us of the desire which is entertained of sending letters and presents to this court at some future opportunity, his Imperial Majesty, in consideration of the respectful conduct and sincere intentions of your Sovereign, has graciously been pleased to signify his consent; but, because the winds and weather upon

* It is hardly necessary to subjoin, that the above speech was in great measure an invention of the Chinese. The proposition, in fact, came from themselves.—See the "Account of the Embassy," vol. ii. p. 486. 4to. ed.

the ocean are variable and uncertain, the year, or exact period, cannot be predetermined, and the period of the arrival of the ambassador at the province of Canton may be suited entirely to the convenience of your kingdom.

According to the laws of this empire, the viceroys and sub-viceroys cannot fail to announce to the Imperial Court the arrival of foreigners, charged with letters and presents, in their respective provinces; therefore, whenever the said ambassador reaches this country, the circumstance will be duly reported to his Imperial Majesty, and his Majesty will undoubtedly issue orders for his gracious reception and entertainment, agreeably to our ancient maxim, of large returns for small favours.

When you shall have returned to your country, it behoves you diligently to inform your Sovereign of these particulars, and specially to apprize him, that, though the requests made by you upon this occasion have not been granted, being incompatible with the existing laws, his Majesty is by no means displeased with you, and that your Sovereign may, therefore, feel himself quite easy on that head; and that, lastly, with respect to any future mission to this court, whenever it arrives it will be graciously received, and bountifully entertained.

These circumstances being thus explicitly declared, the satisfaction of the ambassador cannot fail to be greatly encreased; and he will, doubtless, make the same fully known to his Sovereign, who, also, cannot but feel grateful for these favours. Let this our pleasure, therefore, be duly communicated.

XXXIX.

Address of Ouei, *Viceroy, and* Yen, *Hoppo, or Receiver of the Customs for the Province of Canton, dated in February,* 1805.

We, subscribing ourselves slaves [i. e. the personal and devoted servants] of your Imperial Majesty, humbly address this report, in order to announce the arrival of letters and presents from the King of England, regarding which we solicit a declaration of your Majesty's pleasure.

The circumstance was communicated to us in an address from *Puankhequa,* and the other merchants privileged to trade with foreign nations, in which James Drummond, the Chief of the English nation, is stated to have acquainted them, that his Sovereign, King George the Third, having addressed a letter and presents to the Great Emperor of China, in token of the respectful sentiments with which he is impressed; and, having entrusted them to be conveyed to this province in the merchant ships of his nation, he, the said Chief, was instructed personally to request of us to represent the same to your Imperial Majesty. Perceiving that the knowledge of your Majesty's exalted virtues, widely diffusing itself, had even penetrated into that remote region, and induced the transmission from thence by sea of the present respectful offering, we could not withhold our approbation and concurrence; and we directly agreed to give public audience, in company with the other principal magistrates of the province, to James Drummond, the said Chief; who, accordingly, presented to us,

in due form, a principal and secondary letter of the same tenor, and also the accompanying presents.

Immediately afterwards we directed *Puankhequa*, and the other privileged merchants, to translate the secondary letter for our information, and having since examined it together, with the strictest accuracy, we find the style and contents to be expressive of the esteem and veneration to which your Majesty's gracious and beneficent government is justly entitled, and that the sentiments of congratulation and applause, professed by the King, are in an eminent degree decorous and respectful.

We are aware, that, according to the regulations established concerning the manner of receiving the offerings of foreign nations, an Ambassador should have been deputed on the present occasion; whereas the letters and presents now transmitted to this province, are only addressed to the care of the Chief of the nation, with instructions to him to request of us to communicate their arrival to your Imperial Majesty.

On examination, however, we find that the letters and presents which were addressed from that country in the 60th year of *Kien-lung*, were transmitted to this province in a similar manner; and *Chu-quei*, at that period viceroy of *Quang-tong*, having submitted the circumstance to the consideration of our late illustrious Sovereign, his Majesty was pleased to receive, accept, and also graciously to notice the same in an Edict of Reply.

Whether your Majesty will deign, or not, to accept of the letters and presents now offered, and instruct us to forward the latter to the Imperial court, it does not become us to presume to conjecture; but at present, we transmit

the principal and secondary letters, the Chinese translation, and the lists of presents, humbly soliciting your Imperial Majesty will take the same into consideration; and in the event of your Majesty graciously condescending to accept of the offering, we shall not fail to forward the presents to the court at Pekin, under the charge of a proper officer, immediately on the arrival of the Imperial order.

We conclude this address by humbly soliciting that your Majesty, in your royal wisdom, will instruct us how we may proceed in strict and respectful conformity to your Majesty's pleasure.

SUPPLEMENTARY ADDRESS.

We, subscribing ourselves your Majesty's slaves, *Ouei* and *Yen*, humbly state, in addition to our preceding report, that having observed in the letters of the King of England a notice of the war in which he is engaged with France, and the possible circumstance adverted to, of persons coming from that country to the Chinese empire, with a view to introduce dissensions, by reports insidiously suggested; we have made these circumstances a subject of investigation, and find that, during the 8th moon of the 7th year of *Kia King*, the Chief European resident, or procurador, at Macao, had addressed a letter to the European *So-te-tchao* [the Missionary, Father Bernardo] residing at Pekin, acquainting him that six large English ships of war had anchored in the neighbourhood of Macao, and were suspected to entertain hostile designs against that settlement.

This intelligence was communicated to the superinten-

dant of the Europeans at Pekin, the great officer of state, *Sou-ling-ge*, and it was submitted by him to your Imperial Majesty. Instructions were issued in consequence to *Ky-king*, the late viceroy of this province, to enquire into the circumstances which had been related, and he clearly ascertained that the English ships of war, having been employed in the protection of their commerce, had all departed successively, and had returned to their country without having committed any disturbance or irregularity whatever, during their stay in the neighbourhood of Macao. That nation, however, [the English] being distinguished by its strength and power, the foreign inhabitants of Macao, in consequence feared and suspected them. The whole of the viceroy's report was laid before your Majesty, and is duly recorded. The observations, therefore, of the King of that country, concerning insidious reports, by which dissensions might be introduced, are referable (we think) to the above transaction.

In the course of the present year there have been four of the ships of war of that nation at the port of Canton for the protection of their trade; but they also regularly returned to their country with the merchant ships under their protection, without occasioning the most trifling disturbance or molestation.

In fact, among the foreign ships trading to this port, those of the English nation are laden with the finest cargoes, and carry on by far the most considerable trade; at the same time the conduct of the Chief, and other merchants of that nation, has ever been respectful and obedient.

Having narrowly scrutinized their intentions on this

occasion, we conceive that the English and French, being opposite and contending powers, it was nothing but an apprehension of some misunderstanding being fomented, and proving injurious to their commerce, that has suggested to the English the expediency of entering into these particulars in the letter addressed to your Majesty. When we privately consulted *Puankhequa*, and the other privileged merchants, they unanimously agreed in confirming our ideas on the subject, and added, that those two countries lying in a north-easterly direction, and across the seas, at a vast distance from the province of *Quang-tong*, no ground of apprehension exists, that disturbances can ever be occasioned by them in this quarter. This conclusion we are satisfied is worthy of credit.

We are further apprized by the said Chief, that Lord Castlereagh, one of the Ministers of State in that country, had addressed letters and presents to the great Colao of the Chinese empire, and to the Viceroy of this province, respectively; and that the Honourable William Elphinstone, the Chairman of their East India Company, had likewise addressed letters to the Viceroy and Hoppo of the province, together with presents for the latter.

We informed him, in reply, that as far as the letters and presents addressed by his Sovereign were concerned, no hesitation on our part could exist in submitting every circumstance to the consideration of our Imperial Master; but that with regard to any other letters and presents, the strict and immutable laws of the heavenly empire forbad the ministers of state, and other magistrates, from holding any communication with foreign countries, and that

it would, accordingly, be improper for us to transmit the letter and presents which were designed for the Colao, and we felt ourselves equally restricted from receiving and accepting of those which had been intended for ourselves.

We concluded, therefore, by directing that the said letters and presents might not be presented to us, but be returned to the country from whence they had been sent when an opportunity offered. We humbly submit this Supplementary Address to the consideration of your Imperial Majesty.

XL.

Dated the 7th of the 2d Moon of the 18th year of Kia King. } March 7th, 1805.

IMPERIAL EDICT.

Ouei-she-poo (late viceroy of *Quang-tong*, and *Quang-see*) and others, have solicited a declaration of our pleasure respecting certain letters and presents, which have been sent to us from the Kingdom of England, and they have at the same time transmitted for our inspection a Chinese version of the letter and of the list of presents, in order that we might discern the moderation, sincerity, and respectful style in which we have been addressed by the Sovereign of that kingdom.

On a former occasion, in the course of the 60th of *Kien-lung*, (1795) letters and presents were addressed to our court from the same kingdom, and our late Imperial father was pleased, not only to accept of them, but further to signify his approbation by a gracious donative and letter (edict) of reply. Now, therefore, since that Sovereign

has again made an offering of letters and presents, and has respectfully transmitted them by a ship of his nation to one of the sea-ports of our dominions, we deem it right to accept of the same; and *Na-yen-tching* (acting viceroy of Canton) is hereby desired, conformably to these our intentions, to forward the said presents to our court, under the care of a proper officer, to be especially appointed to that service; and upon their arrival we shall issue a letter, accompanied by a donative, in order that a suitable return may not be wanting, and that our benevolent consideration may be conspicuous.

With respect to the supplementary address, in which we are informed, that, according to the representation of the Chief of the nation at Canton, one of the English Ministers of State had addressed letters and presents to the great Colao, or Prime Minister of the Chinese Empire, and to the Viceroy of the province of Canton, each respectively; and that the Chairman of their East India Company had likewise addressed letters to the Viceroy and Hoppo, together with presents for the latter; we highly approve of the reply of the Viceroy *Ouei-she-poo*, who stated that the laws of the heavenly empire forbad the ministers of state, and other magistrates, from holding any communication with foreign countries, and desired that the letters and presents might not be presented, but returned to the country whence they had been sent.

As it is, however, an established custom, that letters and presents from foreign countries should be forwarded to us through the intervention of the Viceroy and Hoppo, the object of addressing letters to those magistrates is sufficiently obvious; but the letter inscribed to the Mi-

nisters of State, we can only attribute to the circumstance of the King of England having been informed, through his late Ambassador at our court, that *Ho-quen* then superintended the affairs of the European residents at Pekin; and under this idea we cannot easily imagine it to be designed for the inspection of the present ministers in their collective capacity.

Although the original letter has been returned by the late Viceroy *Ouei-she-poo*, there is still room for an exact enquiry from the said Chief, respecting the person for whom the letter addressed to the Minister of State was really intended; and after the matter is clearly investigated, we desire to be informed of the result.

The hostile operations now carrying on by the abovementioned kingdom against France, we consider merely as a contest between two adverse nations, which it is unnecessary to notice, or to make a subject of enquiry.

The circumstance mentioned of four English ships of war having visited the port of Canton, for the purpose of protecting the merchant vessels of that nation, leads us to observe, that the expedient of placing merchant vessels under the protection of ships of war, is not (as we are informed) peculiarly adopted by the English nation, but practised by all the other European powers trading to China, as a precautionary contrivance, which the insecurity of the navigation through foreign seas renders necessary.

That the apprehension of their vessels being seized and plundered in the course of the voyage through foreign seas should have suggested the expediency of dispatching them with convoy, is undoubtedly a matter of indif-

ference to the heavenly empire of China; but were any such instances of rapine or violence to be suffered to occur in the neighbourhood of Macao, a town upon our coast, and near to a principal sea-port of our dominions, would it not justly prove to foreigners a subject of sport and derision!

It is, therefore, more particularly the duty of the Viceroy and his colleagues, strictly to attend to the conduct of the civil and military officers of the province, by whose activity and vigilance the anchorage and vicinity of Macao may be defended, and placed in a state of peace and security. With regard to the convoying ships of war which visit the port, there is undoubtedly some place of anchorage originally allotted to them, and the ancient regulations must strictly be conformed to; it is important that the limits be exactly defined, which they shall not be permitted to transgress.

In a paragraph of the translation of the King's letter, which the Viceroy transmitted to us, we observed the following expressions: "much satisfaction will be entertained in adopting any other measure in which our concurrence may be acceptable."

It appears to us that this observation was made with some particular object in view; not improbably under an idea that the assistance of their forces might be needed to apprehend and destroy the pirates by whom they may have understood the seas of China to be infested; but the terms are not so explicit or precise as to admit of a positive inference. However that may be, the navigation of foreign ships through the neighbouring seas ought to be secured and protected by the vigilance and exertions

of our own magistrates and officers, with the forces subjected to their authority; there never has been a question of employing foreign aid, in order to subdue those transgressors of the laws, and disturbers of the public peace.

The Viceroy *Na-yen-tching*, in obedience to our repeated orders and instructions, must, immediately on his arrival, direct his attention to the completion of all the military operations which may be requisite for the defence and protection of the province, in order that the report thereof may strike terror into criminals, and command the respect of foreigners; and that the general tranquillity resulting by sea and land, may prove him (the viceroy) to be worthy of the important station we have allotted him. This edict we therefore issue for his information. *Khin-tse* (i. e. respect the above).

THE END

London: Printed by C. Roworth,
Bell Yard, Temple Bar.


00088215

Digitized with financial assistance from the
Government of Maharashtra
on 05 October, 2018